# Inseason Forecasts of Sockeye Salmon Returns to the Bristol Bay Districts of Alaska 

Saang-Yoon Hyun

A dissertation submitted in partial fulfillment of the requirements for the degree of

## Doctor of Philosophy

University of Washington

2002

Program Authorized to Offer Degree: Interdisciplinary Program in Quantitative Ecology and Resource Management

# University of Washington 

Graduate School

This is to certify that I have examined this copy of a doctoral dissertation by Saang-Yoon Hyun
and have found that it is complete and satisfactory in all respects, and that any and all revisions required by the final examining committee have been made.

Co-Chairs of Supervisory Committee:

| Ray W. Hilborn |
| :---: |

James J. Anderson

Reading Committee:

| Ray W. Hilborn |
| :---: |
| James J. Anderson |
| Katherine W. Myers |

Date:

In presenting this dissertation in partial fulfillment of the requirements for the Doctoral degree at the University of Washington, I agree that the Library shall make its copies freely available for inspection. I further agree that extensive copying of this dissertation is allowable only for scholarly purposes, consistent with "fair use" as prescribed in the U.S. Copyright Law. Requests for copying or reproduction of this dissertation may be referred to Bell and Howell Information Learning, 300 North Zeeb Road, Ann Arbor, MI 48106-1346, to whom the author has granted "the right to reproduce and sell (a) copies of the manuscript in microform and/or (b) printed copies of the manuscript made from microform."

## Signature

Date

# University of Washington 

Abstract<br>Inseason Forecasts of Sockeye Salmon Returns to the Bristol Bay Districts of Alaska

by Saang-Yoon Hyun

Co-Chairpersons of the Supervisory Committee:
Prof. Ray Hilborn \& Prof. James J. Anderson
Quantitative Ecology and Resource Management

The Bristol Bay sockeye salmon fishery has been the most valuable salmon fishery in North America, and provides season employment for several thousand workers. The fishery consists of five reasonably discrete fishing districts corresponding to watersheds where the salmon are returning to spawn. The long term objective of management is to achieve Maximum Sustained Yield from the fishery, and this is implemented on an annual basis by regulating the time allowed for fishing to allow a predetermined number of fish to pass the fishery and make it to their natal streams and lakes to spawn.

The expected total return of fish to each district is an important part of the fishery management and is equally important to the fishing fleet and the fish processors. I developed a statistical model for inseason run size prediction that uses data from (1) a test fishery at Pt. Moller, (2) the age composition of the catch at Pt. Moller, (3) the total return to date by district and (4) the age composition of the return to each district. Optimization and Bayesian methods are used to obtain both point estimates and distributions of estimates. I found that the temporal pattern in catches at Pt. Moller explained $59 \%$ of the variation in run timing in the fishing districts. Using the preseason forecast as a prior significantly improved the performance of the estimation during the initial stage of the season. This method provides a consistent way to incorporate diverse forms of data in a single unified statistical framework that should provide a significant improvement in inseason run forecasting. The method was tested using data from 1999 and found to perform well. In terms of the absolute values of relative errors of forecasts of the returns to the main districts (Kvichak-Naknek, Egegik, and Nushagak) made on

June 24, June 29, and July 4, the mean values were $86.7 \%, 72.4 \%$, and $59.9 \%$ when preseason forecasts were not incorporated, whereas they were $27.6 \%, 25.4 \%$, and $20.9 \%$ when preseason forecasts were incorporated.

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

List of Figures ..... v
List of Tables ..... xi
Chapter I. Introduction ..... 1
1.1. Research motivation and objectives ..... 1
1.2. Literature review ..... 2
1.2.1. General features of sockeye salmon ..... 2
1.2.2. Bristol Bay sockeye salmon ..... 4
Bristol Bay ..... 4
Life history of the Bristol Bay sockeye salmon ..... 4
Run characteristics ..... 6
1.2.3. Forecasts of the Bristol Bay sockeye salmon returns ..... 7
Preseason forecasts ..... 7
Inseason forecast ..... 9
Other studies of inseason forecast ..... 12
1.2.4. Inseason forecasts of salmon runs to other areas ..... 13
Salmon runs to the Skeena River, B.C., Canada ..... 13
Pink salmon runs to southeastern Alaska ..... 15
Chum salmon run to Hood Canal in Puget Sound, Washington ..... 16
Outmigration of smolts from the Snake River in the Columbia River basin ..... 19
1.2.5. Current management of the Bristol Bay sockeye salmon ..... 21
1.3. Thesis structure ..... 22
1.4. Acronyms ..... 23
Chapter II. Inseason Forecast of Run Timing ..... 32
Introduction ..... 32
Methods ..... 33
2.1. Port Moller test fishery data ..... 33
2.2. Run timing index ..... 33
2.3. Validation of Port Moller RTI ..... 34
2.4. Run timing forecast ..... 35
Results ..... 36
2.5. Port Moller RTI ..... 36
2.6. Relative index of run timing ..... 37
Discussion ..... 37
Chapter III. Inseason Forecasts of Returns by Optimization ..... 50
Introduction ..... 50
Methods ..... 51
3.1. Definition of terms ..... 51
3.1.1. Variable, parameter, predictive variable, and objective function ..... 51
3.2. Notations ..... 52
3.3. Main idea ..... 53
3.4. Objective functions ..... 53
3.4.1. Predictive density of total run size ..... 53
3.4.2. Likelihood function of age-specific run sizes ..... 56
3.4.3. Predictive density of stock-specific run size ..... 58
Evaluation of the five parametric densities ..... 62
3.4.4. Likelihood function of stock- and age- specific run sizes ..... 63
3.5. Parameters ..... 65
3.5.1. Parameters in the predictive density of total run size ..... 65
3.5.2. Parameters in the likelihood function of age-specific runs ..... 66
3.5.3. Parameters in the predictive density of stock-specific run size ..... 67
3.6. Incorporation of run timing forecast ..... 68
Results ..... 69
3.7. Parameter estimates ..... 69
3.8. Forecasts of returns ..... 70
3.8.1. Incorporation of run timing forecast ..... 70
3.8.2. Incorporation of the Port Moller fishery selectivity for age-specific fish ..... 71
Discussion ..... 72
3.9. Assumption of the joint objective function ..... 72
3.10. Sample size in the multinomial probability function ..... 72
3.11. Selectivity of the Port Moller gillnet fishery ..... 73
3.12. Forecasts of returns ..... 74
Chapter IV. Uncertainty in Estimates of Returns ..... 115
Introduction ..... 115
Methods ..... 115
4.1. Parameter distributions ..... 115
4.2. Estimation of returns ..... 117
4.2.1. Bayesian framework ..... 117
4.2.2. Prior distribution of returns ..... 118
4.2.3. Calculation of the joint posterior distribution of returns ..... 119
4.2.4. Alternative method revisited ..... 120
Results ..... 120
4.3. Posterior distributions ..... 121
4.3.1. Marginal posterior distributions of stock-specific returns ..... 121
4.3.2. Uniform prior vs. normal prior ..... 121
Discussion ..... 121
4.4. Preseason forecasts ..... 121
4.5. Port Moller fishery data ..... 122
Chapter V. Conclusions ..... 139
References ..... 143
Appendix I. Introduction to ADMB ..... 150
Quick recipe for running ADMB program ..... 150
TPL file structure ..... 151
Appendix II. Forecast ADMB code ..... 153
TPL file ..... 153

Data file ................................................................................................................ 162

## LIST OF FIGURES


#### Abstract

Figure 1.1 Bristol Bay, Alaska. The star mark indicates the location of Port Moller. The Port Moller test fishery occurs along a transect line between Port Moller and Cape Newenham. The small dots on the transect line represent the stations of the test fishery. From onshore to offshore, the stations are named 2, 4, 6, 8, and 10.


Figure 1.2
Five estuaries and nine river systems in Bristol Bay, Alaska. Names of the respective five estuaries are abbreviated with their first letters ( $T$ : Togiak, $N$ : Nushagak, $K-N$ : Kvichak-Naknek, E: Egegik, and $U$ : Ugashik).
Figure 1.3
The cumulative run proportions of five district stocks. The respective five lines are the mean values of the cumulative run proportions by day of year 1955 through 2001 except for the Togiak district. The data of years 1955 through 1957 for the Togiak district are not available. The cumulative run proportion can be used as a run timing index. I code calendar dates, starting on June 10: day code $1=$ June 10, day code $2=$ June 11, and so on.
Figure 1.4
Annual returns of the Bristol Bay sockeye salmon from 1958 to 2001. Run size (or return size) of a year is the sum of catch and escapement at the year.
Figure 1.5
Annual returns to five districts from 1958 to 2001. A cyclic pattern in annual returns is most remarkable in the Kvichak-Naknek district. This cyclic pattern is mostly due to runs of sockeye salmon to the Kvichak River.
Figure 1.6
The mean values of station- and wind direction- CPUE of the Port Moller fishery deployed during year 1985 through 1999. The winds of northwest, north, northeast, and east led to more offshore distribution of the fish while those of southeast, south, southwest, and west resulted in more onshore distribution.
Figure 1.7
The relationship between 1985-2001 runs to Bristol Bay and the cumulative Rogers' indices up to July 9 of the corresponding years. The line represents fitted values of the regression model: $\hat{Y}=14.202+0.011 \cdot X \quad\left(R^{2}=0.46\right.$, $p=0.004$ ) . Removing the three data points of years 1997, 1998, and 2001, the regression model improves: $R^{2}=0.86, p=0.000$.

Figure 2.1
Historical run proportions of five stocks against day. The data of years 1955 through 2001 are used except for the Togiak stock. The data of years 1955 through 1957 for the Togiak stock are not available.
Figure 2.2
Port Moller Rogers' CPUE index against day by year. The Rogers' index unit is ' $(6,000 \times$ catch $) /[200$ fathoms $\times$ fishing time (min) $]$,' where 6,000 is a scale factor. I code calendar dates, starting on June 10: day code $1=$ June 10, day code 2 = June 11, and so on.
Figure 2.3
The 1999 Port Moller RTI estimate. Dots represent the data of the 1999 cumulative Rogers' indices that are standardized at day code 30 (July 9). The solid line is the logistic curve fitted to the dots. I define RTI as day that corresponds to the inflection point of the fitted logistic curve. The inflection point of the curve is located at the coordinates of $(19.45,0.5)$, and the RTI estimate is 19.45 (square point).
Figure 2.4
Comparison of estimates of the Port Moller RTI of years 1985 through 2001 and those of the inshore RTI of the same period. Dots represent the Port Moller RTI estimates. Lines in the boxes of (A) through (F) indicate the RTI estimates of 'Kvichak-Naknek,' 'Egegik,' 'Ugashik,' 'Nushagak,' 'Togiak,' and 'the lumped five districts,' respectively. The numerical value above the respective box is the correlation coefficient between the dot line and the solid line within the box.
Figure 2.5
An example of forecasting run timing in year 2001 on June 24 (day code 15). When I want to detect run timing of the 2001 season at June 24, I standardize the cumulative Rogers' indices only up to the same day in the past years (before 2001), ignoring the data beyond the day. Intentionally I extend the $x$-axis beyond the day code 15 to show the idea. And then I compare the RTI estimate of the season (2001) with those of the past years. The vertical lines intersect the inflection points of the fitted logistic curves.
Figure 2.6
(A): Yearly inshore RTI estimates of four stocks (excluding the Togiak stock).
(B): Yearly Port Moller RTI estimates evaluated at five day codes 10 (dot line), 15 (circle line), 20 (triangle line), 25 (cross mark line), and 30 (square line). The numerical values on the five lines in the (B) box are the correlation coefficients between the respective line and the inshore RTI in the (A) box.
Figure 2.7
(A): Yearly inshore RTI estimates of four stocks (excluding the Togiak stock).
(B): Yearly Hilborn RTI estimates. The correlation coefficient between the two lines is 0.68 .

## Figure 3.1

(A) Variables and parameters over time; (B) Estimation of updated parameters, and prediction of unobserved data. Estimation of parameters is based only on observed data, and must not be affected by estimates of predictive variables. After parameters are estimated, predictive variables at time $i$ can be calculated with estimates of updated parameters and explanatory variables at time $i$.
Figure 3.2
Contingency table of the predictive run sizes. ' $r_{s, a}$ ' of each cell denotes the final run size of stock $s$ and age $a$. The final run size means the cumulative run size up to the end of the season. ' $r_{s, \text { ' }}$ 'and ' $r_{\bullet, a}$ ' represent the respective marginal sums. ' $R$ ' is the total sum.
Figure 3.3
Rogers' regression model by day. The determination coefficient $\left(R^{2}\right)$ ranges from 0.65 to 0.82 when outlier data (years 1990, 1994, 1997, and 2001) are excluded.
Figure 3.4
Comparison of age composition (in percent) in the Port Moller fishery catch (dots) and that in run size to Bristol Bay (dashed line). Age codes 1 through 4 denote ages $1.2,1.3,2.2$, and 2.3 , respectively.
Figure 3.5
The distribution of the 1999 Egegik run size estimated at the specified day. The distribution predicted at June 30 includes values above the $x$-axis limit, but I don't show them for the same scale of plots in the left column. The dotted vertical line is the actual run size.
Figure 3.6
An example of developing a location gamma density from an ordinary gamma density. The histogram is the 1999 Egegik run distribution predicted at day code 30 (July 9) by Equation 3.12, and the $y$-axis scale is adjusted as the probability density scale. In A, an ordinary gamma density is fitted to the histogram. The ordinary gamma shape looks symmetric while the histogram shape is not. I added the asterisk $\left(^{*}\right)$ mark to the two parameters, $\alpha^{*}$ and $\beta^{*}$ to indicate that they are different from $\alpha$ and $\beta$ shown in C. After shifting the histogram, not changing the shape, I fit another ordinary gamma density to the shifted histogram (B). And then I shift the new ordinary gamma and histogram back to the original location of the histogram (C). The location gamma has an additional parameter, $\gamma$ that indicates the minimum value of the histogram.
Figure 3.7
An example of five densities fitted to the 1999 Egegik run distribution predicted at day code 30 (July 9). Parameters in the respective six densities are estimated by maximum likelihood method.
Figure 3.8
The results of K-S goodness fit test of five parametric densities for the 1999

## Egegik run size. The p-value is the average of those of five tests in Table 3.1, except for the test for the distribution predicted at day code 40 (July 19).

Figure 3.9
An illustration of how I incorporate a run timing forecast into the estimation of run sizes. (A) In forecasting run sizes at day $t$ during the season, I use historical data, which correspond to day $t$ in past years, to estimate parameters in the objective functions. (B) When detecting run timing earlier or later by $q$ days, I use historical data that correspond to day ' $t \pm q$ ' in past years.
Figure 3.10
Summary of Table 3.13, where the 1999 run forecasts are compared with the actual returns. The horizontal dotted line represents the actual run size. The cross mark $(\times)$ points are run forecasts made with the run timing information incorporated, while the square marks are those made with the run timing information not incorporated.
Figure 3.11
Summary of Table 3.14, where the 2000 run forecasts are compared with the actual returns. The horizontal dotted line represents the actual run size. The cross mark $(\times)$ points are run forecasts made with the run timing information incorporated, while the square marks are those made with the run timing information not incorporated.
Figure 3.12
Summary of Table 3.15, where the 2001 run forecasts are compared with the actual returns. The horizontal dotted line represents the actual run size. The cross mark $(\times)$ points are run forecasts made with the run timing information incorporated, while the square marks are those made with the run timing information not incorporated.
Figure 3.13
Comparison of the effect of considering the Port Moller gear selectivity for agespecific fish on the 1999 run forecasts made at day code 25 (July 4) and that of ignoring the selectivity. Dots indicate age composition (in proportion) observed up to the day, solid lines represent that in run forecasts made with the selectivity considered, and, and dashed lines are that in run forecasts made with the selectivity ignored. In case of the 'Port Moller' box, dots are age composition observed in the Port Moller fishery catch up to the day.

## Figure 3.14

Comparison of the effect of considering the Port Moller gear selectivity for agespecific fish on the 2000 run forecasts made at day code 25 (July 4) and that of ignoring the selectivity. Dots indicate age composition (in proportion) observed up to the day, solid lines represent that in run forecasts made with the selectivity considered, and, and dashed lines are that in run forecasts made with the selectivity ignored. In case of the 'Port Moller' box, dots are age composition observed in the Port Moller fishery catch up to the day.
Figure 3.15

Comparison of the effect of considering the Port Moller gear selectivity for agespecific fish on the 2001 run forecasts made at day code 25 (July 4) and that of ignoring the selectivity. Dots indicate age composition (in proportion) observed up to the day, solid lines represent that in run forecasts made with the selectivity considered, and, and dashed lines are that in run forecasts made with the selectivity ignored. In case of the 'Port Moller' box, dots are age composition observed in the Port Moller fishery catch up to the day.
Figure 3.16
Relation between fish length, fish age, and the selectivity of the Port Moller gillnet fishery. The unit of selectivity is a fraction.
Figure 4.1
Comparison of the alternative method (solid line) and the correct method (dashed line) in the likelihood profiles of the parameter estimates that are used for making the 1999 run forecasts at July 4. Regarding the $x$-axis labels and units, refer to Table 4.5 and Table 3.3.
Figure 4.2
Comparison of the alternative method (solid line) and the correct method (dashed line) in the likelihood profiles of the parameter estimates that are used for making the 2000 run forecasts at July 4. Regarding the $x$-axis labels and units, refer to Table 4.5 and Table 3.3.
Figure 4.3
Comparison of the alternative method (solid line) and the correct method (dashed line) in the likelihood profiles of the parameter estimates that are used for making the 2001 run forecasts at July 4. Regarding the $x$-axis labels and units, refer to Table 4.5 and Table 3.3.
Figure 4.4
Comparison of the alternative method (solid line) and the classical method (dashed line) in posterior distributions of the 1999, 2000 and 2001 returns estimated at July 4 of the respective year. The vertical dot line refers to the actual run size. In both cases, I incorporated run timing forecast (Table 2.5) accordingly, and used the uniform densities for the prior densities of returns.
Figure 4.5
Marginal posterior distributions of stock-specific returns of 1999 made at three days: June 24, June 29, and July 4 (each column). Solid lines are the posterior distributions with the uniform prior densities used, and dashed lines are those with the normal prior densities used. Run timing forecast was incorporated accordingly (Table 2.5).
Figure 4.6
Marginal posterior distributions of stock-specific returns of 2000 made at three days: June 24, June 29, and July 4 (each column). Solid lines are the posterior distributions with the uniform prior densities used, and dashed lines are those with the normal prior densities used. Run timing forecast was incorporated accordingly (Table 2.5).

## Figure 4.7

Marginal posterior distributions of stock-specific returns of 2001 made at three days: June 24, June 29, and July 4 (each column). Solid lines are the posterior distributions with the uniform prior densities used, and dashed lines are those with the normal prior densities used. Run timing forecast was incorporated accordingly (Table 2.5).
Figure 4.8
Relative errors (\%) in preseason forecasts of stock-specific returns of 1999, 2000, and 2001. The negative errors indicate under-forecasts. KN: KvichakNaknek; E: Egegik; U: Ugashik; N: Nushagak; T: Togiak.
Figure 4.9
An example illustrating that the normal prior densities of returns decrease the forecast accuracy as time progresses during the season. Forecasts (posterior distributions) of the 2000 returns are made at June 24 (an initial time of the season; left column) and July 9 (a middle time of the season; right column). Dashed lines are the posterior distributions with the normal prior used, and solid lines are those with the uniform prior used.
Figure 4.10
An example showing importance of the Port Moller fishery data. The 2000 run forecasts are made at June 24 (an initial time of the season; left column) and July 14 (a final time of the season; right column) without the Port Moller fishery data (dashed line) and with the data (solid line). The absence of the Port Moller data leads to extremely poor forecasts of returns during the initial stage of the season, but it does not make any difference during the final stage.
Figure 5.1
An example exploring several hypotheses regarding run timing. Posterior distributions of the 2001 returns are estimated at day code 20 (June 29) under three hypotheses: (1) fish run timing in the 2001 season is later by five days than those of the past year seasons (solid line), (2) it is not different from those of the past year seasons (dashed and dotted line), and (3) it is earlier by five days than those of the past year seasons (dashed line). Posterior distributions in the left column are from the uniform prior, and those in the right column are from the normal prior (preseason forecasts).

## LIST OF TABLES

Table 1.124Location of Port Moller test fishery stations (Helton 1991, Rogers et al. 1999).These stations are shown as small dots in Figure 1.1.
Table 1.2 ..... 24The goals of sockeye salmon escapement to eight Bristol Bay river systems(ADFG 1998, Lew personal communication)
Table 2.1 ..... 40The Port Moller RTI estimates of years 1985 through 2001, and their standarddeviations. The Port Moller fishery was not deployed in 1986. The RTIestimate was estimated with the cumulative Rogers' CPUE standardized at thefinal day of the fishery.
Table 2.2 ..... 40The district-specific RTI estimates of years 1985 through 2001, and theirstandard deviations. The RTI estimate was estimated with the cumulative runsize standardized at the final day of the return season. 'KN' denotes Kvichak-Naknek.
Table 2.3 ..... 41The inshore RTI estimates of years 1985 through 2001, and their standarddeviations. They were estimated with the cumulative run size beingstandardized at the final day of the return season. 'All five' denotes the lumpedfive districts, and 'Four districts' means the lumped four districts where theTogiak fish were excluded.
Table 2.441The Port Moller RTI estimates of years 1985 through 2001 and their standarddeviations, evaluated at day codes $10,15,20$, and 25 , respectively.
Table 2.5 ..... 42Relative index of fish run timing of years 1999, 2000, and 2001 evaluated atday codes, $15,20,25$, and 30 , respectively. The minus sign (-) indicates thatrun timing of the season is earlier than the average of those of the past years.These results are to be used in Chapters 3 and 4.
Table 3.1 ..... 76Results of the K-S test of the five densities fitted to the 1999 Egegik rundistribution estimated at day codes 15 (June 24), 20 (June 29), 25 (July 4), 30(July 9), 35 (July 14), and 40 (July 19), respectively. In each cell, the uppervalue and the lower value inside parentheses are p -value and K-S test statistic.
Table 3.276Summary of the objective functions. After taking the negative logarithm ofthe respective objective function, the sum of the negative logarithm functions isthe joint objective function.
Table 3.3 ..... 77Units of parameter estimates in Tables 3.4 through 3.6 and Figures 4.1 through4.3. Subscript $t$ represents a date.Table 3.478Point estimates (MLE) and their standard deviations for the parameters used toforecast the 1999 returns at June 24, June 29, July 4, and July 9, respectively.Subscript $t$ corresponds to the respective forecast date. S.D. denotes standarddeviation. The values under the 'With' column are associated with the runtiming incorporation while those under the 'Without' column are not. Becausethe age-specific gillnet selectivity $\left(G_{a}\right)$ is constant by day within the season, Ishow the values only once. In case of June 29, the estimates under the'Without' column are the same as those under the 'With' column, because PortMoller RTI detected at June 29, 1999 was not significantly different from theoverall RTI in the past years (Table 2.5).
Table 3.5 ..... 80Point estimates (MLE) and their standard deviations for the parameters used toforecast the 2000 runs at June 24, June 29, July 4, and July 9, respectively.Subscript $t$ corresponds to the respective forecast date. S.D. denotes standarddeviation. The values under the 'With' column are associated with the runtiming incorporation while those under the 'Without' column are not. Becausethe age-specific gillnet selectivity $\left(G_{a}\right)$ is constant by day within the season, Ishow the values only once.Table 3.682Point estimates (MLE) and their standard deviations for the parameters used toforecast the 2001 runs at June 24, June 29, July 4, and July 9, respectively.Subscript $t$ corresponds to the respective forecast date. S.D. denotes standarddeviation. The values under the 'With' column are associated with the runtiming incorporation while those under the 'Without' column are not. Becausethe age-specific gillnet selectivity $\left(G_{a}\right)$ is constant by day within the season, Ishow the values only once.
Table 3.7 ..... 84The 1999 run forecasts (thousands) with the run timing informationincorporated.
Table 3.8 ..... 85
The 1999 run forecasts (thousands) with the run timing information not incorporated.
Table 3.9 ..... 86The 2000 run forecasts (thousands) with the run timing informationincorporated.
Table 3.10 ..... 87The 2000 run forecasts (thousands) with the run timing information notincorporated.
Table 3.11 ..... 88

The 2001 run forecasts (thousands) with the run timing information incorporated.

## Table 3.12

The 2001 run forecasts (thousands) with the run timing information not incorporated.
Table 3.13
Comparison of the effect of incorporating the run timing forecast on the 1999 run forecasts and that of ignoring the run timing forecast. 'With' and 'Without' denote 'with incorporation of the run timing forecast' and 'without it.' Units of the forecast and error values are 'numbers in thousands' and '\%.' The minus () sign indicates an under-forecast.
Table 3.14
Comparison of the effect of incorporating the run timing forecast on the 2000 run forecasts and that of ignoring the run timing forecast. 'With' and 'Without' denote 'with incorporation of the run timing forecast' and 'without it.' Units of the forecast and error values are 'numbers in thousands' and '\%.' The minus () sign indicates an under-forecast.
Table 3.15
Comparison of the effect of incorporating the run timing forecast on the 2001 run forecasts and that of ignoring the run timing forecast. 'With' and 'Without' denote 'with incorporation of the run timing forecast' and 'without it.' Units of the forecast and error values are 'numbers in thousands' and '\%.' The minus () sign indicates an under-forecast.

## Table 3.16

Evaluation of the incorporation of the Port Moller gear selectivity for agespecific fish in forecasting the 1999 returns. The forecast (thousands) and error (\%) values under the 'Without' column represent those calculated with the selectivity ignored. The values under the 'With' column are the same as those under the 'With' column in Table 3.13. In both cases, I incorporated the run time forecast information accordingly. The minus (-) sign indicates an underforecast.
Table 3.17
Evaluation of the incorporation of the Port Moller gear selectivity for agespecific fish in forecasting the 2000 returns. The forecast (thousands) and error (\%) values under the 'Without' column represent those calculated with the selectivity ignored. The values under the 'With' column are the same as those under the 'With' column in Table 3.14. In both cases, I incorporated the run time forecast information accordingly. The minus (-) sign indicates an underforecast.
Table 3.18
Evaluation of the incorporation of the Port Moller gear selectivity for agespecific fish in forecasting the 2001 returns. The forecast (thousands) and error (\%) values under the 'Without' column represent those calculated with the
selectivity ignored. The values under the 'With' column are the same as those under the 'With' column in Table 3.15. In both cases, I incorporated the run time forecast information accordingly. The minus (-) sign indicates an underforecast.
Table 3.19
Age-specific proportions in data observed up to day code 25 (July 4) of year 1999, and those in the 1999 run forecasts made at the day. The first category is the observed data available up to the day, the second category is the run forecasts made with the Port Moller selectivity for age-specific fish considered, and the third one is the run forecasts with the selectivity ignored. These values are used to draw Figure 3.12.
Table 3.20
Age-specific proportions in data observed up to day code 25 (July 4) of year 2000, and those in the 2000 run forecasts made at the day. The first category is the observed data available up to the day, the second category is the run forecasts made with the Port Moller selectivity for age-specific fish considered, and the third one is the run forecasts with the selectivity ignored. These values are used to draw Figure 3.13.
Table 3.21
Age-specific proportions in data observed up to day code 25 (July 4) of year 2001, and those in the 2001 run forecasts made at the day. The first category is the observed data available up to the day, the second category is the run forecasts made with the Port Moller selectivity for age-specific fish considered, and the third one is the run forecasts with the selectivity ignored. These values are used to draw Figure 3.14.
Table 4.1
Data that are used to calculate the variances of preseason forecasts by stock and age. The unit of the actual and forecast run size is number in thousands. KN denotes Kvichak-Naknek.
Table 4.2
The variances of the 1999 preseason forecasts by stock and age. The MSE values for preseason forecasts of Togiak returns of ocean age-2 could not be calculated, so the values were replaced by the average of the MSE values for preseason forecasts of Togiak returns of ocean age-3. That is, 5,652 is the mean value of 8,266 and 3,037 (see the bottom row). The unit is (number in thousands) ${ }^{2}$.
Table 4.3
The variances of the 2000 preseason forecasts by stock and age. The MSE values for preseason forecasts of Togiak returns of ocean age-2 could not be calculated, so the values were replaced by the average of the MSE values for preseason forecasts of Togiak returns of ocean age-3. That is, 5,457 is the mean value of 8,763 and 2,150 (see the bottom row). The unit is (number in thousands) ${ }^{2}$.
Table 4.4 ..... 126
The variances of the 2001 preseason forecasts by stock and age. The MSE values for preseason forecasts of Togiak returns of ocean age-2 could not be calculated, so the values were replaced by the average of the MSE values for preseason forecasts of Togiak returns of ocean age-3. That is, 24,482 is the mean value of 45,772 and 3,193 (see the bottom row). The unit is (number in thousands) ${ }^{2}$.
Table 4.5
Labels in Figures 4.1, 4.2, and 4.3. Table 3.3 shows a detailed description about the parameters and their units.
Table 4.6
Forecast errors (\%) in posterior distributions of the 1999 returns calculated at the given day with the two prior densities of runs being used: uniform and normal. The error values are a relative difference between the modes of the posterior distributions in Figure 4.5 and the corresponding actual returns. The minus (-) sign indicates an under-forecast.
Table 4.7
Forecast errors (\%) in posterior distributions of the 2000 returns calculated at the given day with the two prior densities of runs being used: uniform and normal. The error values are a relative difference between the modes of the posterior distributions in Figure 4.6 and the corresponding actual returns. The minus (-) sign indicates an under-forecast.
Table 4.8
Forecast errors (\%) in posterior distributions of the 2001 returns calculated at the given day with the two prior densities of runs being used: uniform and normal. The error values are a relative difference between the modes of the posterior distributions in Figure 4.7 and the corresponding actual returns. The minus (-) sign indicates an under-forecast.

## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

It has been an adventure to work in the Quantitative Ecology and Resource Management (QERM) program at the University of Washington (UW). I thank God and the people who have helped me reach the finish line. I feel honored to have excellent advisors: Ray Hilborn and James Anderson. Hilborn provided the original ideas for this dissertation. Hilborn's guidance was critical to the development and completion of my dissertation. Anderson was my M.S. thesis advisor as well. Anderson was flexible, helpful, and supportive. I also thank my other committee members: Kate Myers and Steve West. Myers' editing improved my writing. West was my graduate school representative.

Financial support for this project was mainly from two sources: Research Assistantship with the Highseas project, and Teaching Assistantships through the QERM program and the Center for Quantitative Science (CQS). I express my deep thanks to Highseas project scientists (Kate Myers, Trey Walker, and Nancy Davis) and the QERM and CQS faculty for their support. I especially appreciate the thoughtful supervision of Loveday Conquest, co-director of QERM. Ashley Steel of the Northwest Fisheries Science Center (NWFSC) provided one-quarter Research Assistantship.

One of the hardest parts in my thesis was programming in optimization software, ADMB. Billy Ernst and James Ianelli helped me with the programming. Without their help, I could not have completed this thesis work. I highly acknowledge Ernst's versatile characteristics; he is a carpenter, a sailor, and good company as well as an intelligent scientist. UW Alaska Salmon Program (ASP) and the Alaska Department of Fish and Game (ADFG) provided data. My special thanks go to Warner Lew, a former UW ASP staff.

I was fortunate to meet many good people while I was in the graduate school. The International Rotary Foundation, which provided the scholarship for my first year M.S. work, assigned George Harry Jr as my Rotary counselor. His helpfulness and interest
not only in my academic progress but also in my personal life were truly supportive. I sincerely and deeply respect him for his academic intelligence, social activity, and rationality. Others to whom I am also indebted are James Norris, Eric Anderson, Beth Babcock, Vincent Gallucci, Steve Mathews, Owen Hamel, Joel Reynolds, Chris Foote, Kevin Brinck, Ray Timm, Kris Ryding, and friends in QERM and Fisheries at the UW. The advertisement poster that Carolina Minte-Vera and Billy Ernst made for my final defense was surprising, beautiful, and entertaining. I will keep the poster forever.

One of the valuable lessons that I have learned during my graduate studies is cooperation: to help and to be helped. I have been helped much by many people. I would be glad to help those who need my knowledge.

It took several years for me to work for my M.S. in Fisheries and my Ph.D. in QERM at the UW. While I have worked for my graduate studies in the United States, my family in Korea gained new members. My sister gave birth to two children, letting me become an uncle for them, and my brother married recently. I wished to see my nephew and niece often, and I was sorry not to attend my brother's wedding. I thank my family for having been healthy and cheerful. It was not easy to have lived alone in a foreign country, but the time I spent in Seattle has been one of my best times in my life.

## DEDICATION

To my special friend, George Harry Jr


## PROFILE OF GEORGE HARRY JR

## Academic record

B.S. Oregon State University, 1940, fisheries.
M.S. University of Michigan, 1941, zoology.

Ph.D. University of Washington, 1956, fisheries.

## Work record

1941-1946. Sea duty as naval officer.
1947-1954. Commercial fisheries biologist. Oregon Fish Commission, Astoria.
1954-1958. Director, Fisheries research and management of all Oregon Fish Commission projects, including river fisheries and hatcheries. Portland.
1958-1967. Director, National Marine Fisheries Auke Bay Laboratory, Juneau, Alaska.
1967-1970. Director, NMFS research laboratory, Ann Arbor, Michigan.
1970-1980. Director, National Marine Mammalogy laboratory, Seattle.
Retired-1980.

## CHAPTER I. INTRODUCTION

### 1.1. RESEARCH MOTIVATION AND OBJECTIVES

There are some common goals in managing anadromous fish like Pacific salmon (genus, Oncorhynchus) in the northwest. The goals are to hit an escapement goal of homing fish, to conserve inherited characteristics of a stock, and to maximize the harvest of surplus fish. Surplus fish mean fish left after subtracting an escapement from a run. The first and second goals concern biological conservation of the management stock in terms of not only abundance but also genetic characteristics. The third goal concerns economic benefit. To achieve these goals, managers need to know in advance the run size and timing of homing fish. Generally there are two kinds of forecasts for anadromous fish management: a preseason forecast and an inseason forecast. A preseason forecast is made before homing fish start to arrive at a local management area. The preseason forecast information is mainly used for fish buyers and processors such as canneries. However the preseason forecast information is usually not accurate enough to be used for management. The managers rely on an inseason forecast to achieve the three goals. Once fish reach a local management area, managers start to monitor the run and collect data through a test fishery. On the basis of these data, an inseason forecast is made. As the data are accumulated, the inseason forecast is updated periodically to improve the estimates of run size and timing. This inseason forecast helps managers regulate fisheries that target the homing fish. The regulations include opening or closing a fishery in a certain area during a certain time.

Sockeye salmon (O. nerka) of Bristol Bay, Alaska are also managed with the same goals as those described above. Bristol Bay is located in the southeastern Bering Sea and is surrounded by five estuaries (Figures 1.1 and 1.2). There are mainly eight stocks that compose the Bristol Bay sockeye salmon run. A problem in managing the Bristol Bay sockeye salmon is derived from difference in escapement goal and run timing between stocks. To conserve run timing profiles of stocks, optimal number of spawners should be allowed to reach their spawning grounds over the entire season period. In other words, fishing activity should be properly distributed over the season. Because of these stock-
specific goals, it is not a good idea to apply the same fishing effort to all stocks during the season. The current fisheries that target the Bristol Bay sockeye salmon are not allowed to occur in the ocean beyond the five estuaries. But the estuary-specific fishery does not guarantee a stock-specific exploitation because some stocks have to pass a common estuary. A drift gillnet, which is the legal fishing gear in Bristol Bay, is sizeselective but cannot be stock-selective unless the fish body size significantly differs between stocks. Another factor that makes the stock-specific management difficult is the short time window of the salmon run. Because about $80 \%$ of sockeye salmon usually migrate through Bristol Bay within two weeks, the Alaska Department of Fish and Game (ADFG) must make quick decisions about fishery regulations.

Even though inseason forecasts were first made in 1968 (Eggers and Fried 1984, Helton 1991, Rogers 1994), there is no systematic algorithm for estimating stock-specific runs during the season. The main objective of my research is to estimate stock-specific run sizes on a daily basis during the season. The data are mainly catch and age composition from three fishery sources: an offshore test fishery, estuary fisheries, and escapement fisheries. As the season progresses, the data are updated, and estimates of stock-specific runs are improved. Because of the short duration of the salmon run, 'daily' estimates of stock-specific runs are desired. This information will help ADFG managers to decide inseason regulations to achieve the three management goals. Specific objectives of this research are to develop a computer algorithm for inseason forecasts of returns, and to implement the algorithm into software to be used by managers.

### 1.2. LITERATURE REVIEW

### 1.2.1. General features of sockeye salmon

Pacific sockeye salmon are also called red salmon (Alaska), blueback salmon (Columbia River), nerka and krasnaya ryba (Russia), benizake and benimasu (Japan) (Burgner 1991). Sockeye salmon are anadromous like other fish of the genus Oncorhynchus, but some sockeye salmon populations called 'kokanee' spend their entire
life only in fresh water. Another important feature of sockeye salmon is the semelparous life history; the fish spawn only once during their entire life and then die.

The primary spawning grounds of sockeye salmon range from $47^{\circ} \mathrm{N}$ to $63^{\circ} \mathrm{N}$ (Burgner 1991). The grounds in North America extend from tributaries of the Columbia River to the Kuskokwim River in western Alaska, and those of Asia are distributed on the Kamchatka Peninsula, Russia.

Mature sockeye salmon return to their natal stream mainly during June through September, and spawn and fertilize eggs before they die. The sockeye eggs in stream gravel develop during September through January, and the sockeye alevin emerge from the natal gravel during January through April (Burgner 1991, Pearcy 1992). The main characteristic of the alevin stage is the presence of 'yolk.' Once the fish yolk disappears, the fish stage is called 'fry.' The sockeye fry migrate to lakes during May through June. Sockeye salmon require a 'lake' rearing environment for the juveniles. This requirement is a distinction of sockeye salmon, which is different from some fish of the genus, Oncorhynchus. Chinook (O. tshawytscha) and coho salmon (O. kisutch) utilize 'stream' rearing environments as juveniles. The residence time of the sockeye juvenile fish in lake ranges from one year to three years. When the juvenile fish are ready for ocean life phase by undergoing a series of physiological, behavioral and biochemical changes (Hoar 1976), they are called 'smolts.' The sockeye smolts migrate to the ocean during June through July. Their ocean residence time, during which they are maturing, ranges from one year to three years. Ocean growth of the immature and mature sockeye salmon continues while they reside in the ocean (French et al. 1976, Burgner 1991). The ocean distribution of sockeye salmon occurs mainly in the north Pacific Ocean, covering a latitudinal range from $40^{\circ} \mathrm{N}$ through $65^{\circ} \mathrm{N}$ and a longitudinal range from $150^{\circ} \mathrm{E}$ through $125^{0} \mathrm{~W}$.

### 1.2.2. Bristol Bay sockeye salmon

## Bristol Bay

Bristol Bay of Alaska is located at the southeastern area of Bering Sea and the coordinates of the bay center are $58^{\circ} \mathrm{N} 159^{0} \mathrm{~W}$ (Figures 1.1 and 1.2). The bay is surrounded mainly by five estuaries: Togiak, Nushagak, Kvichak-Naknek, Egegik, and Ugashik (Figure 1.2). As a term of the management unit, these estuaries are often called 'districts.' Districts of Nushagak and Kvichak-Naknek are connected to a few rivers. The flow of Nushagak district is contributed mainly by the Igushik River, the Wood River, and the Nushagak River, and that of Kvichak-Naknek district is contributed mainly by the Kvichak River, the Branch River, and the Naknek River (Figure 1.2). Thus, Bristol Bay has mainly nine river systems: Togiak, Igushik, Wood, Nushagak, Kvichak, Branch, Naknek, Egegik, and Ugashik. Iliamna Lake, the largest of the sockeyeproducing lakes in the world $\left(2,622 \mathrm{~km}^{2}\right)$ is connected to the Kvichak River (Burgner 1991).

## Life history of the Bristol Bay sockeye salmon

The Bristol Bay sockeye salmon begin their ocean life phase when they enter the bay. Sockeye smolts enter the bay mainly during late May through June. Despite that the five estuaries of the bay are radially located, the juveniles from those estuaries choose the coastal waters along the southeast side of inner and outer Bristol Bay during their seaward migration (Straty 1974). At the juvenile stage in Bristol Bay, the main food item of the juveniles is zooplankton. By September, substantial numbers of Bristol Bay sockeye juveniles are still only $460-560 \mathrm{~km}$ from their estuaries of origin. They tend to remain within about 100 km of the shore during their feeding and migration movement. During the first fall and winter in the marine environment, their migration direction is variable: to the middle of the Bering Sea and to the southward through the Aleutian passes. The main water source of the Bering Sea is the Alaskan Stream, an extension of the Alaskan Current of the Alaskan Gyre (Verkhunov 1995). Stomachs of the juveniles sampled in the Bering Sea included other food items beside zooplankton: larval capelin
(Mallotus villosus), sand lance (Ammodytes hexapterus), and herring (Clupea harengus pallasi) (Foerster 1968, French et al 1976).

The ocean distribution of the Bristol Bay sockeye salmon during their maturing stage ranges from about $46^{\circ} \mathrm{N}$ in the central North Pacific Ocean to about $64^{\circ} \mathrm{N}$ in the Bering Sea and from about $175^{\circ} \mathrm{E}$ to about $145^{\circ} \mathrm{W}$ of the Gulf of Alaska. The limiting factor of the distribution seems to be water temperature (Burgner 1991, Pearcy 1992).

The return time of the Bristol Bay mature sockeye salmon is almost simultaneous except the Ugashik and Togiak stocks that consistently return a few days later (Figure 1.3). The run duration is very short; it happens mainly during one month from about the middle of June through the middle of July. About $80 \%$ of the returns occur only within a two-week period despite their diverse distribution at sea (Burgner 1980). By summer, the Bristol Bay adult sockeye salmon are in much lower abundance in the high-seas as their inshore returns progress. Four age groups account for about $98 \%$ of all Bristol Bay returns: 1.2, 2.2, 1.3 and $2.3^{1}$ (Fried et al. 1988), even though the proportions of age groups can vary each year.

In stomachs of the homing adults caught in the basin area of the central Bering Sea, food items were found to be more varied and included squid, fish larvae, amphipods, and euphausiids, whereas in the shelf area to the east, the items were almost exclusively euphausiids, with a small proportion of fish larvae, including walleye Pollock (Nishiyama 1974, 1984). The average stomach content volume was greater in the sockeye salmon sampled from the shelf area, which appeared to coincide with the general trend of zooplankton biomass distribution between the two areas (the central Bering Sea and the shelf area). The caloric value per unit weight of food consumed was also greater in the shelf area. This coincidence in the stomach content volume and the zooplankton biomass supports the idea that salmon are opportunistic feeders (Pearcy 1992).

[^0]
## Run characteristics

One of the most remarkable characteristics of the Bristol Bay sockeye salmon run is high annual variability in abundance. Dealing with the returns of year 1958 through 2001, the coefficient of variation (CV) ${ }^{2}$ was 0.60 (Figure 1.4). As an extreme example, the return size of 1995 (60,488,000 fish) was almost 27 times as many as that of 1973 (2,245,000 fish).

Another characteristic of the returns is a cyclic pattern (Figure 1.4). This cyclic pattern is mostly due to returns of sockeye salmon to the Kvichak River (Figure 1.5). The Kvichak stock returns have cycled with four or five year periodicity. Because the data of only the Kvichak stock returns are not available, I show the returns to the Kvichak-Naknek district in Figure 1.5. The Kvichak stock generally returns as the highest abundance among the Bristol Bay river stocks except its off-peak years.

Some literature suggests a possible mechanism for the cyclic pattern in the annual return size (Mathews 1967, Eggers and Rogers 1987). Mathews (1967) postulated an interaction between spawning populations of successive years. The postulate is that a large spawning population might change some controlling environmental factor such as food organisms or the intra-gravel environment, and this change might be detrimental to the production of sockeye salmon in the ensuing two years. With the assumption, Mathews (1967) modified the deterministic Ricker model between spawners and recruits into a stochastic version by incorporating an error term in calculating recruits. Besides, the modified model has spawners of the past two years as well as the current year in calculating the resultant recruits. By simulation with this modified version, Mathews (1967) succeeded in producing the cyclic pattern in returns. However, the real data used in the simulated model were limited to those of just seven years, and the values for parameters in the model were arbitrarily chosen.

In addition to the suppression of production following large escapement, the sockeye salmon fishery also seems to have been responsible for the cyclic pattern. The early fishery (before adoption of formal escapement goals) was limited by processing

[^1]capacity and only loosely regulated for a fifty percent exploitation rate (Eggers and Rogers 1987). During the peak cycle year runs, fish mortality by this fishery tended to be much lower than average. With this reasoning, Eggers and Rogers (1987) called the mechanism 'depensatory fishing.' A 'depensatory' mechanism is defined as a relationship where mortality of a population decreases as the population abundance increases.

### 1.2.3. Forecasts of the Bristol Bay sockeye salmon returns

Bristol Bay sockeye salmon compose over $50 \%$ of the sockeye salmon harvested in North America (Fredin 1980, Rogers 1986). Because of this high productivity, Bristol Bay sockeye salmon are an important economic source in the northwest. From year 1958 through 2001, the annual average catch of the Bristol Bay sockeye salmon was 16.4 million (Figure 1.4). In managing this valuable population, forecasts of returns are a critical part. Recalling the high variability in annual returns (Figure 1.4) and the short duration in return time, accurate forecasts are strongly desired by managers and the fishing industry.

The first forecasts were made by UW FRI (University of Washington Fisheries Research Institute) in about 1950 (Rogers 1998). About 1962, the Alaska Department of Fish and Game (ADFG) started to participate in forecasting the annual runs from inshore observations (escapements, smolts, and age composition) and in 1984, salmon processors asked UW FRI to make forecasts from these data to provide a second opinion.

## Preseason forecasts

At present, preseason forecasts of sockeye salmon returns to Bristol Bay are made by both ADFG and UW FRI. Salmon buyers and processors such as canneries use preseason forecasts to determine staff and equipment needed for production of fresh, frozen, and canned products and to plan deployment of tenders and processing vessels (Fried and Yuen 1987). For the industry, a forecast is most useful when available well in advance of the run (at least six months before the run). ADFG also uses preseason forecasts to set a quota for a commercial fishery at False Pass (Hilborn, Personal communication); 8\% of the forecast run are allocated for the False Pass fishery (Figure
1.1). Run predictions are made for each major age group (usually four ages: 1.2, 2.2, $1.3,2.3$ ) and summed to obtain a forecast for a river system. Then the river system forecasts are summed to predict the run to a fishing district, and the predicted catch is obtained by subtracting the recent five year average of escapements from the district run.

From 1987 to 1996, the ADFG forecast of the Bristol Bay sockeye salmon run differed from the actual run by an average of $27 \%$ (range: $9-56 \%$ ), and the UW FRI forecast differed by an average of $22 \%$ (range: 5-43\%) (Rogers 1998). However, in case of forecasts of the 1997 and 1998 runs, the forecasts by both agencies differed from the actual runs by about $100 \%$. The actual runs of 1997 and 1998 turned out to be far smaller than the forecasts. For example, the UW FRI preseason forecasts of the 1997 and 1998 runs were 35.1 millions and 33.8 millions but the actual runs of those years were 18.9 millions and 18.3 millions, respectively. This serious discrepancy between forecasts and actual runs left unreliable the traditional forecast methods that ADFG and UW FRI have used.

I briefly describe the methods of preseason forecasts by ADFG and UW FRI. ADFG uses mainly two ways to forecast individual river system stocks by major age group. The first method is to use spawner-recruit data and its forecasts are calculated through a linear form of the Ricker model (Brannian et al. 1982).

$$
\ln \left(R_{a, s, y} / E_{s, y}\right)=\ln (a)-b \cdot E_{s, y}
$$

where $R_{a, s, y}$ : the number of age $a$ fish returning to river system $s$ from spawning during brood year $y ; E_{s, y}$ : the number of spawners in river system $s$ during brood year $y ; a$ and $b$ are parameters.

The second method is to use sibling and smolt data and its forecasts are estimated through a linear form suggest by Peterman (1981, 1982a, b).

$$
\ln \left(R_{a, s, y}\right)=a+b \cdot \ln \left(S_{a-1, s, y}\right)
$$

where $S_{a-l, s, y}$ : the number of age $a-1$ smolts produced by brood year $y$ and migrating seaward from river system $s$. Forecasts using smolt data are possible only from river systems that have smolt enumerating programs. Smolt enumerating programs were
started in Kvichak River system in 1971, Wood River system in 1975, Naknek and Egegik River systems in 1982, and Ugashik in 1983, respectively.

In UW FRI, preseason forecasts have been made traditionally by Rogers since 1985, but the recent forecast of the 2000 run was also made by Hilborn. The traditional methods by Rogers depend on relationships between numbers of fish in a run and estimates of the numbers of fish at earlier times in their life (e.g. the approaching run, immature fish at sea, seaward migrant smolt, fry in lakes, or the number of spawners) (Rogers 1994). By regression models with these variables, Rogers predicts fish return by river system and by age.

Hilborn et al (1999) use mainly four data sources to predict returns: (1) jack returns, (2) sibling returns, (3) spawners, and (4) the past year returns. The return of jacks usually provides a good prediction of the next year's return of 2-ocean fish. And there often exists a strong relationship between the return of 2-ocean fish and subsequent return of 3-ocean fish from the same cohorts. These relationships with jacks return and sibling returns offer a basis in predicting returns by regression models. However, these regression analyses of Rogers and Hilborn do not incorporate an unexpected change in salmon ecosystem. To avoid the serious failure of the forecasts of the 1997 and 1998 runs, Hilborn checks the historical pattern in recruits per spawner and the total return by brood year. He suggests alternative run forecasts by simply averaging the recruits per spawner and the recent past runs over different time horizons.

## Inseason forecast

Inseason forecast of sockeye salmon return to Bristol Bay is useful mainly to three entities: (1) ADFG managers, (2) the commercial processing industry, and (3) fishermen. Managers need an idea of the run size to determine when to allow commercial fishing. The industry processors use the inseason forecast to decide how many tenders to employ and how many floating processors to send to the bay. And based on the inseason forecast, fishermen decide whether it is worth gearing up for the fishing season (Hilborn et al. 1999).

The inseason forecast of the return is initially based on catch per unit effort (CPUE) of a test fishery that occurs offshore from Port Moller, Alaska during the salmon return season (Figure 1.1). And the return size estimate is updated also by commercial catch reporting and spawning escapement monitoring every day of the season. The inseason forecast project by the Port Moller test fishery had been operated by ADFG from 1968 to 1985, but it has been taken by UW FRI since 1987 (Eggers and Fried 1984, Helton 1991, Rogers 1994). These inseason forecasts have provided more accurate predictions than preseason forecasts because the relative abundance of the run of a year is estimated just six - eight days before fish arrival in the bay. The inseason forecast of the Port Moller test fishery provides the fishing industry and management agency, or ADFG with fish run timing as well as fish run size.

The Port Moller test fishery gear is a drift gillnet. Its stretched-mesh size is five and $1 / 8$ inches ( 13.02 cm ), and it is 200 fathoms long ( 366 m ) and 60 meshes deep ( 7.81 $\mathrm{m})$. CPUE at each fishery station is calculated by dividing the catch number by the product of the drift gillnet length times fishing time. When the unit of fishing time is minutes, UW FRI uses the following CPUE formula.

$$
\begin{equation*}
\text { CPUE }=6,000 \times \frac{\text { catch }}{[200 \text { fathoms } \times \text { fishing time (minutes) }]} \tag{1.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

where 6,000 is a scale factor. Beside the catch data, the Port Moller fishery project collects information about water turbidity by Secchi disc, water temperature, air temperature, cloud cover, wave height, wind speed, wind direction, and tide (Rogers et al. 1999). UW FRI operates Port Moller test fishery from early June to about July 10. The test boat attempts to fish each day at several stations located along a transect line between Port Moller and Cape Newenham (Figure 1.1, Rogers 1999). From onshore to offshore along the transect line, the stations are named $2,4,6,8,10$, and 12 . Station 2 is located 33 miles out from Port Moller and the distance between sequential stations of these even numbers is 10 miles (Table 1.1). The daily fishery operation consists of a set of these stations. Traditionally only four stations, $2,4,6$ and 8 had been considered until stations 10 and 12 were added from year 1999. If many fish are caught from station 8 , the crew fishes at station 10 and even at station 12 to detect the offshore distribution of fish
passage. The fish spatial distribution over the inshore through offshore (i.e. station 2 through station 8) has not been constant every year. With the Port Moller data set of 1985 through 1989, Helton (1991) found that CPUE at stations 2 and 4 were higher under north, northwest, and west winds. However, my analysis with the data set of 1985 through 1999 produced a different result from that of Helton (1991). The winds of northwest, north, northeast, and east led to more offshore distribution of the fish while those of southeast, south, southwest and west resulted in more onshore distribution (Figure 1.6).

Rogers of UW FRI found that the CPUE from station 8 has been significantly correlated with the actual run size. Rogers weighted the CPUE of station 8 twice those of the other stations 2,4 , and 6 . We call the sum of the weighted CPUEs of a day Rogers' index of the day.

$$
\begin{equation*}
\text { Rogers' index of day } t=\frac{4}{5} \cdot\left(\mathrm{CPUE}_{2, t}+\mathrm{CPUE}_{4, t}+\mathrm{CPUE}_{6, t}+2 \cdot \mathrm{CPUE}_{8, t}\right) \tag{1.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

where CPUE $_{s, t}$ denotes CPUE of the test fishery deployed at station $s$ and day $t$. The inseason forecast with Port Moller fishery data is made by the ordinary regression model, where its response variable is the historical actual run size and its explanatory variable is the cumulative Rogers index up to the latest fishery date. With the runs of year 1985 through 2001 (that of 1986 is missing) to Bristol Bay and the cumulative Rogers' indices up to July 9 of the corresponding years, the Rogers' regression model was $\hat{Y}=14.202+0.011 \cdot X \quad\left(R^{2}=0.46, p=0.004\right)$ (Figure 1.7) where $\hat{Y}$ is the predicted run, and $X$ is the cumulative Rogers' index. In Figure 1.7, the three points of 1997, 1998 and 2001 look outliers. Excluding those points, the regression model improved: $R^{2}=0.86$, $p=0.000$. The failure of the Rogers' inseason forecasts of the 1997, 1998 and 2001 runs also provoked re-examination of the traditional methodology of the forecast.

## Other studies of inseason forecast

Other studies of the inseason forecasts of the Bristol Bay sockeye salmon runs, Mundy (1979) and Fried and Hilborn (1988), differ from the literature described above in methodology. Mundy (1979) defined 'fish migratory timing' as a frequency distribution of time. In other words, fish migratory timing referred to fish abundance per unit time in a fixed geographic reference frame. He showed by literature review that fish migratory timing was unique by fish stock, and used the concept of migratory timing to estimate fish return size. He considered fish arrival time a random variable, and normalized fish migratory timing (i.e. a frequency distribution of time). He called the normalized frequency of the fish arrival date 'the time density.' The return size of sockeye salmon to Bristol Bay was estimated with the time density developed with historical data from an offshore test fishery. When $x$ fish were observed up to day $d$ from a test fishery, the total run size in the season could be estimated by dividing $x$ by the cumulative time density at $d$.

Fried and Hilborn (1988) used Bayesian law to make an inseason forecast of the Bristol Bay sockeye salmon return. They combined the probability densities of four data sources: (1) data used for a preseason forecast, (2) cumulative commercial CPUE of Unimak fishery, (3) cumulative CPUE of Port Moller test fishery, and (4) cumulative commercial catch and spawning escapement data. The combined probability density was used as the resultant joint density given the return size, which was the parameter of their interest. As prior probability of the return size, they chose a set of 67 alternative hypotheses corresponding to total run sizes ranging from 0 to 66 million (using increments of 1 million sockeye salmon). They fitted a Gamma density to the historical runs of year 1956 through 1987 and used the Gamma density to calculate the prior probability of the respective run in the 67 hypotheses. Because the Gamma density is continuous, they needed to scale the prior probabilities by letting the sum of the prior probabilities become one. Finally they calculated posterior probability of the return size by Bayesian law. This calculation was repeated every day when the inseason data are updated. As results of a hind-casting procedure, where only data prior to the year of interest were used to calculate predictive equations, the Bayesian composite forecast was
always more accurate than the least accurate one of the forecasts with individual data sources and was sometimes more accurate than the most accurate one of the forecasts with individual data sources.

### 1.2.4. Inseason forecasts of salmon runs to other areas

## Salmon runs to the Skeena River, B.C., Canada

Walters and Buckingham (1975) developed a control system for inseason salmon management with sockeye salmon and pink salmon (O. gorbuscha) of the Skeena River, B.C., Canada. The main idea of their control system was to correct control variables or management actions in the system as data were updated. The management actions were determined on weekly basis. The objective of the management was to achieve target escapements of the two salmon species and to allow a fishery on the surplus fish. They needed to estimate the run size of the respective salmon for the objective. Because of high uncertainty in the preseason forecast, they combined the preseason estimate and the inseason estimate by weighting these two estimates as daily data were updated. That is,

$$
R=W_{t} \cdot R_{p}+\left(1-W_{t}\right) \cdot R_{i}
$$

where $R$ : run estimated, $W_{t}$ : weight based on data to time $t\left(0 \leq W_{t} \leq 1\right), R_{p}$ : preseason estimate of run, $R_{i}$ : inseason estimate of run. When the preseason forecast and the inseason forecast were assumed to be independent of each other, the variance of run was as follows.

$$
\operatorname{Var}(R)=W_{t}^{2} \cdot \operatorname{Var}\left(R_{p}\right)+\left(1-W_{t}\right)^{2} \cdot \operatorname{Var}\left(R_{i}\right)
$$

The value of $W_{t}$ was determined as $W_{t}$ that minimized $\operatorname{Var}(R)$ in the above equation. Thus, the $W_{t}$ was able to be expressed as a function of $\operatorname{Var}\left(R_{p}\right)$ and $\operatorname{Var}\left(R_{i}\right)$. The $W_{t}$ was near 1 early in the season, and decreased as $\operatorname{Var}\left(R_{i}\right)$ decreased (i.e. as time went by). Because of this role of the weight $W_{t}$, the run estimated was affected more by preseason forecast early in the season and more by inseason forecast later in the season.

In making an inseason forecast of the salmon run, Walters and Buckingham (1975) used the observed run to date in the season and the historical daily run proportions of the
run. The inseason estimate, $R_{i}$ was calculated by simply dividing the observed run to date by historical cumulative proportion to the date. The observed run to date in the season was the sum of catch and escapement to the date.

$$
R_{i}=\frac{\text { observed run to date }}{\text { cumulative proportion to date }}
$$

Regarding the calculation of $\operatorname{Var}\left(R_{i}\right)$, they directly used the formula of Bigelow of International Institute for Applied Systems Analysis (IIASA) without giving the reasoning (Walters and Buckingham 1975, p. 112). No description was available except that the variance calculation of the formula was approximated. I guess that the approximation may have been from the Taylor series approximation. The variance formula was

$$
\operatorname{Var}\left(R_{i}\right) \approx \frac{R_{t}^{2} \cdot \operatorname{Var}\left(P_{t}\right)}{P_{t}^{4}} \cdot\left[1+2 \cdot \frac{\operatorname{Var}\left(P_{t}\right)}{P_{t}^{2}}\right]
$$

where $R_{t}$ : observed run to time $t$, and $P_{t}$ : mean cumulative proportion returned at time $t$.
This information of the estimated run was used to calculate a target exploitation rate ${ }^{3}$ each week.

$$
\text { target rate }=\frac{(\text { total desired catch })-(\text { catch to date })}{(\text { total remaining run })}
$$

However, where there was difference between sockeye salmon and pink salmon in run timing, applying a common target rate to the two salmon runs would have been problematic. Walters and Buckingham (1975) let different target rates be applied separately to sockeye salmon and pink salmon over different time zone.

The key control variable in the system of Walters and Buckingham (1975) was the number of open days for the fishery each week. The following equation of a catch curve was used to calculate the number of open days.

$$
U=(1-\exp [-c \cdot(E \cdot d)])
$$

[^2]where $U$ : exploitation rate, $c$ : catchability coefficient, $E$ : fishing effort per day open, and $d$ : days open. When exploitation rate $U(=\mathrm{catch} /$ run $)$, catchability coefficient $c$, and effort per day open $E$ are known, days open $d$ can be calculated from the above equation. The calculation of exploitation rate $U$ was described in the above paragraph. Weekly fishing effort per day open $E$ were empirically calculated on the basis of relations with CPUE of the previous week in the season of this year and with CPUE of the week in the season of last year. Catchability coefficient $c$ was calculated from the above relationship of exploitation rate $U$ and days open $d$ with the data of year 1971 through 1973. Finally days open $d$ could be calculated. This procedure from the estimation of run to the determination of fishing days was repeated every week in the season.

## Pink salmon runs to southeastern Alaska

Sex ratio information was used to make an inseason forecast of the pink salmon run to southeastern Alaska (McKinstry 1993, Zheng and Mathisen 1998). A remarkable pattern in pink salmon runs was temporal change in sex ratio; male pink salmon were preponderant during the first half of the run and female pink salmon during the second half.

Because the possible number of sexes was two (male or female) and thus sex could be considered a binomial variable, McKinstry (1993) used a logistic regression suited for binomial data. In the logistic regression model, he estimated run timing of pink salmon, specifically the mean timing day (MTD). The proportion of male fish being observed at time $t$ was formulated as a logistic function.

$$
p(t)=\frac{\exp (\alpha+\beta \cdot t)}{1+\exp (\alpha+\beta \cdot t)}
$$

where $\alpha$ and $\beta$ are parameters. The inflection of this logistic curve was considered a change in preponderance from males to females. MTD was defined as the time that corresponds to the inflection point of the curve. That is, the value of $t$, that make the above $p(t)$ be 0.5 , was defined as MTD. The $t$ value could be expressed as $\alpha$ and $\beta: t=-\alpha / \beta$. When taking the logit function in the above equation, we get a linear form:

$$
\operatorname{logit}(p(t))=\log \left(\frac{p(t)}{1-p(t)}\right)=\alpha+\beta \cdot t
$$

These parameters $\alpha$ and $\beta$ were able to be estimated by fitting the linear form of the logistic function to observed $p(t)$. Thus, the predicted MTD was given as ' $-\hat{\alpha} / \hat{\beta}$ '. The mean value of the historical MTD values was adjusted by the predicted MTD in the season (the mean curve of historical run proportions at a given time was shifted by the adjusted time). On the basis of the shifted run proportion curve, total run size was predicted:

$$
\text { Predicted total run }=\left(\begin{array}{c}
\text { observed run to date } t / \text { run proportion at date } t
\end{array}\right)
$$

Adjusting run timing turned out to improve the inseason forecasts. However a big improvement generally occurred only following the middle of the run.

The setting of Zheng and Mathisen (1998)'s study was the same as that of McKinstry (1993). They developed a sex ratio index with data of cumulative catch by all gears or cumulative CPUE of the seine fishery, and estimated run of pink salmon in the season by three models: a linear model, a non-linear model, and a combined model. In these models, the response variable was the run size and the candidate predictive variables were the sex ratio index, cumulative catch, cumulative CPUE, and cumulative catch. The sex ratio index was derived from deviations of weekly male proportions to the corresponding mean values and the deviation of the sex ratio curve to its mean curve for a given year. Incorporating sex ratios into inseason forecast models correctly adjusted the run timing and thus improved overall forecasts. The forecast errors of Zheng and Mathisen (1998) were much smaller than those reported by McKinstry (1993). The difference was due to different forecast models, methods used to incorporate sex ratio data into forecast models, stock definitions, and periods when the forecasts were conducted.

## Chum salmon run to Hood Canal in Puget Sound, Washington

Springborn et al (1998) used a time density model for an inseason forecast of the chum salmon run to Hood Canal in Puget Sound, Washington. The concept of a time
density had been first used by Mundy (1979) to estimate fish abundance. The concept was described in the sub-section, 'Other studies of inseason forecast' under section 1.2.3. Springborn et al. (1998) extended the Mundy (1979)'s idea to estimate run size and entry timing for the northern Hood Canal chum salmon fishery. Two kinds of fishing gear were used: drift gillnets and purse seines. Their inseason forecast model consisted of two parts. The first part was to build the time density with daily CPUE data from the drift gillnet fishery and to estimate run size and entry timing in the season. The second part was to correct the run size estimate of the first part by catch data from the purseseine fishery in the season. Because of a large disparity in the daily harvest rate between the gillnet fishery and the purse-seine fishery, Springborn et al. (1998) did not use catch data from the purse-seine fishery for the time density model. Including daily CPUE from the purse-seine fishery into building the time density would lead to serious inflation of the run size estimate. The model deployed in the second part was a linear regression model where a peak 1-day purse-seine catch and the time density run estimate were used as independent variables to provide a 'corrected' run size estimate. The peak 1-day purse-seine catch had been found significantly correlated with the actual run size.

Because I already described how the time density was used to estimate the run size in the season, I describe here how to estimate run timing from the time density. Letting 'fish arrival time' be a discrete random variable (say $Y$ ), the mass function of $Y$ would be a normalized frequency of the arrival time. Thus, the mass function ${ }^{4}$ of fish arrival time in year $j$ would be

$$
f_{Y_{j}}\left(y_{i j}\right)=\frac{n_{i j}}{N_{j}}
$$

where $n_{i j}$ : the number of fish that pass a reference region at time $i$ in year $j, N_{j}$ : the total number of fish over the entire time range in year $j$. The expectation value of the arrival time would be

[^3]$$
E\left(Y_{j}\right)=\sum_{i=1}^{l} y_{i j} \cdot f_{Y_{j}}\left(y_{i j}\right)
$$
where the time interval (day) ranges from 1 to $l$. The overall mean over year 1 through year $m$ on the basis of historical data would be
$$
\Gamma=\frac{\sum_{j=1}^{m} E\left(Y_{j}\right)}{m}
$$

When year $j$ was the year of inseason forecast, the parameter of interest (say, $\beta$ ) was difference in run timing between the past and the year $j$.

$$
\begin{equation*}
\beta_{j}=\Gamma-E\left(Y_{j}\right) \tag{1.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

With the historical data, the parameters $\beta_{j}$ 's of each year $j$ could be estimated. However, it is the parameter of the current year not the past year in which we are interested in the forecast.

To estimate the parameter $\beta_{j}$ of the current year, Springborn et al. (1998) took the following steps. With the assumption that $n_{i j}$, the number of fish passing a region at time $i$ in year $j$ was proportional to $\mathrm{CPUE}_{i j}$ of the fishery at the region on time $i$ in year $j, n_{i j}$ in the above time mass was replaced by $\mathrm{CPUE}_{i j}$. That is, $C P U E_{i j}=c \cdot n_{i j}$ where $c$ is a proportional constant. And then Springborn et al. (1998) related the cumulative mass function of $Y$ to a cumulative distribution function that has properties similar to the cdf of a normal density. That is,

$$
\begin{equation*}
F_{Y_{j}}(t)=\sum_{i=1}^{t} \frac{C P U E_{i j}}{c \cdot N_{j}}=\frac{1}{\{1+\exp [-(a+b \cdot t)]\}} \tag{1.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

The right side of this above equation was from Mathisen and Berg (1968). When adding run timing parameter $\beta_{j}$ to $t$ in the above equation,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{i=1}^{t} C P U E_{i j}=\frac{c \cdot N_{j}}{\left\{1+\exp \left[-\left(a+b \cdot\left(t+\beta_{j}\right)\right)\right]\right\}} \tag{1.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

This above model was called the 'time-shifted' distribution. For estimation of $a, b$, and $c$, the historical data of $\beta_{j}, C P U E_{i j}$ and $N_{j}$ were used. And then $\beta_{j}$ of the season was estimated from the observed daily $C P U E_{i j}$ in the season, the estimated values of $a, b$, and $c$, and the estimated $N_{j}$.

## Outmigration of smolts from the Snake River in the Columbia River basin

In the Columbia River Basin, there are concerns about smolt mortality by dams during the outmigration because smolts must pass several dams before reaching the ocean. Since 1988, wild salmon have been PIT-tagged through monitoring and research programs conducted by the Columbia River fisheries agencies and Tribes (Townsend et al. 1996, 1997). With the data of PIT-tagged recoveries and the outmigration time (day), Townsend et al. $(1996,1997)$ predicted the proportion of a particular population that arrived at an index site on a given date. The forecast of the proportion can be used to adjust daily spill amounts of a dam during the migration season. Regulating the timing and volume of water released from storage reservoirs has become a central mitigation strategy for improving downstream migration conditions for juvenile salmonids in the Snake River. Townsend et al. $(1996,1997)$ introduced three methods to predict the proportion $\hat{p}$ of the outmigration run at a given day and site, and combined three values from the three algorithms to give the final estimate $\hat{p}$.

In the first method, historical outmigration runs over time were used as an important reference. For each year, the percentage of the cumulative outmigration run by date was calculated. The proportions of the historical cumulative runs were plotted against date. The cumulative run was divided into 100 equal portions and the slopes over each corresponding interval were calculated. The cumulative runs were smoothed to filter out statistical randomness. The slopes of the historical curves at each percentage were to be compared to that of the current year of prediction. The total squared error for each predicted percentage of outmigration run was calculated according to the following.

$$
\operatorname{LSE}(\hat{p})=\sum_{i=1}^{n} \sum_{j=0}^{100}\left(S_{o j}-S_{i j \hat{p}}\right)^{2} \cdot W_{i j}
$$

where $S_{o j}$ : the slope at the $j$ th percentile $(j=0,1,2, \ldots, 100)$ for the current year of prediction, $S_{i j p}$ : the slope at the $j$ th percentile for the $\hat{p}$ percent the historical year $i(i=$ $1,2, \ldots, n)$, and $W_{i j}$ : weight for the $j$ th percentile for $i$ th historical year. LSE denotes Least Squares Error. The goal of this algorithm is to find $\hat{p}$ that minimizes the LSE. The weight $W_{i j}$ is

$$
W_{i j}=\frac{D_{o j}+D_{i j}}{R_{o}+R_{i}}
$$

where $D_{o j}$ : estimated number of days between the $(j-1)$ and the $j$ th percentile for the season, $D_{i j}$ : number of days between the $(j-1)$ and $j$ th percentile for the $i$ th historical year, $R_{o}$ : range in days of the current observed outmigration, and $R_{i}$ : range in days of the $i$ th historical year outmigration. The effect of the $W_{i j}$ is to give more weight to the errors generated in the tails of the distribution, where the slopes tend to be flat and the number of days between sequent percentile points is high. The sum of weights is one.

The second algorithm used the PIT-tag data. The proportion $\hat{p}$ for a given day and site was calculated by the following relationship.

$$
\hat{p}=\frac{x_{d}}{\bar{p} \times N}
$$

where $x_{d}$ : total observed smolts to day $d, \bar{p}$ : the mean 'recapture' proportion of the previous years, and $N$ : total number of smolts tagged in the season. The denominator represents the expected fish to be recovered.

The third algorithm used the average number of days since the outmigration started, weighted by the number of fish observed per day. The average number was called the mean-fish-run-age (MFRA). Thus, MFRA was formulated as follows.

$$
M F R A=\frac{\sum_{d=1}^{n}\left[f i s h_{d} \times(n+1-d)\right]}{\sum_{d=1}^{n} f i s h_{d}}
$$

where fish $_{d}=$ number of fish observed on day $d ; n=$ total number of days until the cumulative proportion $p$ of the total smolt outmigration has been observed. The present year's MFRA is matched to the respective historical year's MFRA. The historical observed $p$ corresponding to the matching MFRA is the predicted $\hat{p}$ from that year.

The $\hat{p}$ values from the above three algorithms were given the respective weight in calculating the final value, $\hat{p}$.

### 1.2.5. Current management of the Bristol Bay sockeye salmon

Commercial and subsistence fisheries mainly target sockeye salmon. Commercial sockeye salmon harvests in Bristol Bay began in 1893 (Minard and Meacham 1987, ADFG 1998). The current commercial fishing is usually limited to five major fishing districts (Figure 1.2). In case of the Wood River and the Naknek River, commercial 'inriver' fisheries sometimes occur. Two kinds of legal fishing gears are allowed in the commercial harvests: (1) 150 fathom ( 274.5 m ) drift gillnets fished from 32 foot ( 11.1 m ) gillnet boats and (2) 50 fathom ( 91.5 m ) set gillnets attached to the beach. A subsistence fishery is operated by Alaska residents. Subsistence salmon fishing is significant in numbers of fish utilized as well as in its cultural importance to watershed residents (Minard and Meacham 1987). The subsistence harvest has a legal priority over commercial and sport harvests. A sport harvest of the Bristol Bay sockeye salmon is not significant.

At present, the agency managing the Bristol Bay sockeye salmon is ADFG. The primary management strategy of ADFG is expressed as three goals. The first goal is to meet the required number of spawners in each of eight major river systems: Togiak, Igushik, Wood, Nushagak, Kvichak, Branch, Naknek, Egegik, and Ugashik. Sockeye salmon return to the Branch river system is not significant. The optimal escapements are set by ADFG. The escapement goals are shown in Table 1.2 (ADFG 1998, Lew personal communication). The second goal is to conserve the profile of the escapement return time. To achieve this second goal, ADFG needs to distribute catches and escapements over the entire run and to preserve genetic diversity. The third goal is to maximize
harvests of the surplus fish after subtracting the optimal escapements from the returns. The third goal concerns the economic aspect.

To achieve these three goals, ADFG needs to assess the sockeye salmon run timing and strength during the fish return season. The inseason assessment is based on observations of various sources: the Port Moller test fishery, the commercial district fishery, spawning escapement monitoring, aerial surveys over spawning grounds, the district test fishery, and the in-river test fishery (ADFG 1998). The district test fishery is deployed at irregular times while the in-river test fishery is operated at every tide change (every flood tide and every ebb tide). The within-district test fishery is held in every district except the Togiak district. The in-river test fishery is operated in only four rivers: the Kvichak River, the Egegik River, the Ugashik River, and the Igushik River (Minard and Meacham 1987).

The ADFG manages each of the river specific stocks as an individual entity. Commercial fishing openings and closures are predicated on attainment of escapement goals and are implemented by flexible rather than fixed fishing schedules (Minard and Meacham 1987). Authority to open and close fishing districts by emergency order has been given to biologists located near the fishing grounds, allowing rapid management response time. Thus each of the five districts is managed independently to conform to the individual stock characteristics of run timing and strength.

### 1.3. THESIS STRUCTURE

The technical part of this dissertation comprises three chapters: Chapters 2, 3, and 4. In Chapter 2, I use the Port Moller test fishery data to detect run timing of Bristol Bay sockeye salmon during the season. In Chapter 3, I develop an algorithm for forecasting district-specific run sizes, and show point estimates of runs. In Chapter 4, I use Bayes' law to show probability distributions for runs. All forecast results in this thesis are based on a hind-casting procedure, where only data prior to a forecast time are used to calculate forecasts of run timing and run sizes.

In Chapter 5, I discuss a management application of this thesis work. In Appendices, I show the forecast program written in Automatic Differentiation Model Builder (ADMB), and describe how to run the ADMB program for one who wants to use it.

### 1.4. ACRONYMS

ADFG: Alaska Department of Fish and Game
ADMB: Automatic Differentiation Model Builder
CPU: Central processing unit
CPUE: Catch per unit effort
CV: Coefficient of variation
K-S test: Kolmogorov-Smirnov goodness of fit test
MCMC: the Markov Chain Monte Carlo method
MB: megabyte(s)
MLE: Maximum likelihood estimate (estimator)
MSE: Error mean square or residual mean square
RAM: Random access memory
RTI: run timing index
UW ASP: University of Washington Alaska Salmon Program
UW FRI: University of Washington Fisheries Research Institute

Table 1.1. Location of Port Moller test fishery stations (Helton 1991, Rogers et al. 1999). These stations are shown as small dots in Figure 1.1.

| Station | Miles from Port Moller | Latitude | Longitude |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 2 | 33 | $56^{\circ} 25.48 \mathrm{~N}$ | $160^{\circ} 44.88 \mathrm{~W}$ |
| 4 | 43 | $56^{\circ} 35.15 \mathrm{~N}$ | $160^{\circ} 50.71 \mathrm{~W}$ |
| 6 | 53 | $56^{\circ} 45.07 \mathrm{~N}$ | $160^{\circ} 56.96 \mathrm{~W}$ |
| 8 | 63 | $56^{\circ} 54.43 \mathrm{~N}$ | $161^{\circ} 01.96 \mathrm{~W}$ |
| 10 | 73 | $57^{\circ} 03.86 \mathrm{~N}$ | $161^{\circ} 07.83 \mathrm{~W}$ |

Table 1.2. The goals of sockeye salmon escapement to eight Bristol Bay river systems (ADFG 1998, Lew personal communication.)
\($$
\begin{array}{lll}\hline \text { District } & \text { River system } & \text { Escapement goal } \\
\hline \text { Kvichak-Naknek } & \text { Kvichak } & \begin{array}{l}\text { 4-6 millions for off-peak years } \\
\\
\end{array}
$$ <br>

\)\cline { 2 - 3 } \& Naknek \& 0.8 millions for peak and pre-peak years\end{array}$]$|  | Egegik | $0.8-1.4$ millions |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Egegik | Ugashik | $0.5-1.2$ millions |
| Ugashik | Igushik | $150,000-250,000$ |
| Nushagak | Wood | $0.7-1.2$ millions |
|  | Nushagak | $340,000-760,000$ |
| Togiak | Togiak | $100,000-200,000$ |



## Pacific Ocean

$$
\begin{gathered}
160^{0} \mathrm{~W} \\
\text { | }
\end{gathered}
$$

Figure 1.1. Bristol Bay, Alaska. The star mark indicates the location of Port Moller. The Port Moller test fishery occurs along a transect line between Port Moller and Cape Newenham. The small dots on the transect line represent the stations of the test fishery. From onshore to offshore, the stations are named $2,4,6,8$, and 10 .


Figure 1.2. Five estuaries and nine river systems in Bristol Bay, Alaska. Names of the respective five estuaries are abbreviated with their first letters ( $T$ : Togiak, $N$ : Nushagak, $K-N$ : Kvichak-Naknek, $E$ : Egegik, and $U$ : Ugashik).


Figure 1.3. The cumulative run proportions of five district stocks. The respective five lines are the mean values of the cumulative run proportions by day of year 1955 through 2001 except for the Togiak district. The data of years 1955 through 1957 for the Togiak district are not available. The cumulative run proportion can be used as a run timing index. I code calendar dates, starting on June 10: day code $1=$ June 10 , day code $2=$ June 11, and so on.


Figure 1.4. Annual returns of the Bristol Bay sockeye salmon from 1958 to 2001. Run size (or return size) of a year is the sum of catch and escapement at the year.


Figure 1.5. Annual returns to five districts from 1958 to 2001. A cyclic pattern in annual returns is most remarkable in the Kvichak-Naknek district. This cyclic pattern is mostly due to runs of sockeye salmon to the Kvichak River.


Figure 1.6. The mean values of station- and wind direction- CPUE of the Port Moller fishery deployed during year 1985 through 1999. The winds of northwest, north, northeast, and east led to more offshore distribution of the fish while those of southeast, south, southwest, and west resulted in more onshore distribution.


Figure 1.7. The relationship between 1985-2001 runs to Bristol Bay and the cumulative Rogers' indices up to July 9 of the corresponding years. The line represents fitted values of the regression model: $\hat{Y}=14.202+0.011 \cdot X \quad\left(R^{2}=0.46, p=0.004\right)$. Removing the three data points of years 1997, 1998, and 2001, the regression model improves: $R^{2}=0.86, p=0.000$.

## CHAPTER II. INSEASON FORECAST OF RUN TIMING

## INTRODUCTION

Variability in fish run timing is one of the main factors that make difficult an accurate inseason forecast of fish run size. Sockeye salmon adults return to Bristol Bay mainly during one month from about the middle of June through the middle of July (see the sub-section of 'Life history of the Bristol Bay sockeye salmon' under section 1.2.2). Figure 2.1 displays the historical run proportions against day. The run proportions against day can be a run timing indicator (Figure 1.3). I find large yearly variability in the run timing (Figure 2.1). Not only in Figure 2.1 but also in this entire thesis, I code calendar dates, starting on June 10: day code $1=$ June 10, day code $2=$ June 11, and so on. In sub-sections, 'Pink salmon runs to southeastern Alaska,' and 'Chum salmon run to Hood Canal in Puget Sound, Washington' under section 1.2.4, I described ideas about a forecast of fish run timing found in literature.

At present, there is no accepted method for forecasting run timing of Bristol Bay sockeye salmon. As an ad hoc index of run timing of the fish, Hilborn (personal communication) uses the ratio of the sum of Rogers' CPUE of June 21 through June 30 (day code 21) to the sum of the indices up to June 20. Rogers' CPUE is the weighted CPUE calculated with the catch data of the Port Moller test fishery (Equation 1.2). Though Hilborn's run timing index provides some information about run timing, we have to wait until June 30 during the season to calculate the index.

The objective of this chapter is to develop an acceptable algorithm for forecasting run timing of Bristol Bay sockeye salmon on a daily basis during the run season. I use the Port Moller test fishery data.

## METHODS

### 2.1. PORT MOLLER TEST FISHERY DATA

I used Rogers' CPUE to detect fish run timing. In the historical catch data set of the Port Moller fishery, Rogers' CPUE of some days were missing because the fishery could not be deployed under unexpected circumstances such as bad weather, or damage to the fishing gear or boat. I replaced the missing CPUE with the mean value of those of the days before and after. Figure 2.2 shows Rogers' CPUE against day by year. The Port Moller fishery was not deployed in 1986, so Figure 2.2 does not show data for 1986.

### 2.2. RUN TIMING INDEX

I standardized the cumulative daily CPUE by setting the final sum equal one (100\%). Then, I fit the following logistic curve to the standardized cumulative CPUE.

$$
\begin{equation*}
y=\frac{1}{1+\exp (a+b \cdot x)} \tag{2.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $x$ is time (day), $y$ is the cumulative Rogers' CPUE, and $a$ and $b$ are parameters. I defined fish run timing index (RTI) as time (day) that corresponded to the inflection point of the fitted logistic curve. That is, the RTI unit is 'day,' but not necessarily discrete. Figure 2.3 shows an example, where I fit the logistic curve to the standardized cumulative CPUE of year 1999 .

The analytical derivation of RTI was simple. Differentiating $y$ of Equation 2.1 twice with respect to $x$, and then solving ' $d^{2} y / d x^{2}=0$ ' for $x$ led to the following.

$$
\begin{equation*}
x=-\frac{a}{b} \equiv R T I \tag{2.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

The RTI value is determined by two parameters: $a$ and $b$ (Equation 2.2). I call this index 'Hyun's index' to ease comparison with other alternative indices.

I used the Delta method (Seber 1982) to derive the variance of RTI. The idea of the Delta method is to expand a function of interest by the Taylor series and then to
consider the first significant terms. Thus, a variance formula derived by the Delta method is an approximation formula. By the Delta method, I had the following formula for calculation of the RTI variance.

$$
\begin{align*}
\operatorname{Var}(R T I) & =\operatorname{Var}\left(-\frac{a}{b}\right) \\
& \approx\left[\frac{E(a)}{E(b)}\right]^{2} \cdot\left[\frac{\operatorname{Var}(a)}{E(a)^{2}}+\frac{\operatorname{Var}(b)}{E(b)^{2}}-\frac{2 \cdot \operatorname{Cov}(a, b)}{E(a) \cdot E(b)}\right] \tag{2.3}
\end{align*}
$$

I used statistical software, Splus in estimating the two parameters ( $a$ and $b$ ) in the non-linear logistic curve (Equation 2.1) and their covariance. The 'nls' function in Splus enabled us to fit a non-linear model to data, and the output provided the estimates of parameters in the model and their variance-covariance matrix.

### 2.3. VALIDATION OF PORT MOLLER RTI

Because the Port Moller catch data were from a 'test' fishery, the data size was not large enough to produce statistically reliable results. Thus, I compared the Port Moller RTI with run timing of Bristol Bay sockeye salmon, which was inferred from run data (= catch + escapement) of the inshore Bristol Bay. I applied the same idea to the inshore run data. That is, I standardized the cumulative inshore-run, and fit the logistic curve of Equation 2.1 to the cumulative run size. Finally, I defined the inshore RTI as time (day) that corresponded to the inflection point of the fitted curve.

Table 2.1 shows the Port Moller RTI estimates of years 1985 through 2001. Table 2.2 displays the district-specific RTI estimates of the same period. And Table 2.3 has those of the lumped five district fish and the lumped four district fish (excluding the Togiak district fish). Standardizing the cumulative data (Rogers' CPUE for the Port Moller RTI; run size for the inshore RTI) at the final days (July 9 for the Port Moller RTI; the end of the return season for the inshore RTI), I calculated these RTI estimates.

Run timing of year 1994 was latest while that of year 2001 was earliest on the basis of the inshore RTI estimates of years 1985 through 2001 (Table 2.3). I found a high
correlation between the yearly Port Moller RTI estimates and those of the inshore RTI except for the Togiak and Ugashik fish (Figure 2.4). The correlation coefficients between the Port Moller RTI estimates and each of those of districts Kvichak-Naknek, Egegik, Ugashik, Nushagak, and Togiak were $0.73,0.75,0.53,0.78$, and 0.36 , respectively (Figure 2.4). The correlation coefficient between the Port Moller RTI estimates and those of the lumped five districts was 0.75 (Figure 2.4). When comparing the Port Moller RTI estimates with those of the lumped four districts excluding the Togiak district, the correlation coefficient increased a little to 0.77 . The high correlations indicate that the Port Moller RTI can detect run timing of the Bristol Bay sockeye salmon.

### 2.4. RUN TIMING FORECAST

To forecast fish run timing is to compare the run timing estimate of the season with those of the past years. We are interested in how early or how late the run timing is compared to those of the past years. That is, a forecast of run timing is a relative index on the basis of a comparison between the present and the past. However, it is more desirable to detect run timing before the final day of the Port Moller fishery season because the earlier we forecast fish run timing, the more helpful the forecast information is.

To capture run timing as the meaning of a relative index before the final day of the Port Moller test fishery,
(1) I standardize both the cumulative Rogers' CPUE at any arbitrary day during the season and those at the same day of the past years,
(2) I calculate the Port Moller RTI of the respective years from the corresponding fitted logistic curves,
(3) finally I compare the Port Moller RTI of the season with those of the past years (Equation 2.4).

Figure 2.5 illustrates an example where fish run timing of year 2001 is evaluated at June 24. I intentionally extended the $x$-axis of Figure 2.5 beyond day code 15 (June 24) to emphasize that the analysis can be done at any day (not necessarily at final day); I ignored the historical data after the day.

I defined the relative index of run timing of the season as the difference between the Port Moller RTI estimate of the season and the average of those of the years prior to the season.

$$
\begin{align*}
& \text { Relative index of run timing } \\
&=(\text { Port Moller RTI estimate of the season })  \tag{2.4}\\
&-(\text { the average of those of the years prior to the season })
\end{align*}
$$

We can calculate the relative index of run timing at any day during the season. The positive sign of the relative index indicates that run timing of the season is later than the average of the past years, while the negative sign means that that of the season is earlier. In case of the above example (Figure 2.5), the relative index of the 2001 run timing evaluated at June 24 was '-1.1.' That is, the 2001 run timing detected at June 24 was earlier by about one day than the average of the past years. As the season data are accumulated over time, the run timing detection should improve (see Table 2.5).

## RESULTS

### 2.5. PORT MOLLER RTI

Table 2.4 presents the Port Moller RTI estimates of year 1985 through 2001 and their standard deviation estimates evaluated at the following four days: day codes 10 (June 19), 15 (June 24), 20 (June 29), and 25 (July 4). Table 2.1 has those evaluated at day code 30 (July 9). Figure 2.6 compares the yearly Port Moller RTI estimates evaluated at the respective day with those of inshore RTI of four districts (excluding Togiak district). The five lines in Figure 2.6 (B) are the yearly Port Moller RTI estimates evaluated at day codes $10,15,20,25$, and 30 in order from the bottom dotted line to the top square box line. The numerical values on the five lines of Figure 2.6 (B)
are the correlation coefficients between the respective line and the inshore RTI. The correlation coefficients were high $(0.75,0.76,0.77$, and 0.77$)$ except for the Port Moller RTI estimates of day code 10. It was an encouraging result that the Port Moller RTI estimates of even day code 15 were highly correlated with the inshore RTI estimates ( $r=$ 0.75 in Figure 2.6).

### 2.6. RELATIVE INDEX OF RUN TIMING

Table 2.5 displays the relative index of fish run timing of years 1999, 2000, and 2001 evaluated at day codes, $15,20,25$, and 30 , respectively. The 1999 run timing was slightly later than the average of the past years while those of 2000 and 2001 were earlier. For example, the 1999 run timing detected at July 4 was later by about one day ( 0.6 in Table 2.5) than the average of the past years, and those of 2000 and 2001 were earlier by about three days and about two days, respectively ( -3.4 and -2.4 in Table 2.5). As expected, run timing detection improved as the season data were accumulated over time; absolute values of the relative indices of 2000 and 2001 increased over evaluation time (from 1.4 to 3.8 for year 2000, and from 1.1 to 3.3 for year 2001 in Table 2.5). The results of Table 2.5 are used in Chapters 3 and 4.

## DISCUSSION

Port Moller RTI of years 1985 through 2001 were well correlated with those of the Kvichak-Naknek, Egegik, and Nushagak fish while they were poorly correlated with those of the Togiak fish (Figure 2.4). This is not a surprising result because run timing of the Togiak fish is significantly different from those of the other district fish (Figure 1.3).

Port Moller RTI seems to detect run timing, but does not explain a considerable portion of run timing variability. The correlation coefficient between the yearly Port Moller RTI evaluated at the final day of the test fishery season and those of the lumped four district fish (excluding the Togiak fish) was 0.77 (Figure 2.6). That is, Port Moller

RTI accounted for at most $59 \%$ of run timing variability: $0.59=0.77^{2}$ (the determination coefficient $=$ the correlation coefficient ${ }^{2}$ ). If the yearly Port Moller RTI were evaluated before the final day, the proportion of run timing variability explained by Port Moller RTI would be less than $59 \%$.

The correlation coefficient between two sequences indicates how well the fluctuation of elements in a sequence corresponds to that of elements in the other sequence, but the value does not represent the fluctuation magnitude. Note that the yearly RTI of the four district fish (excluding the Togiak fish) in Figure 2.6 (A) fluctuate much more remarkably than the yearly Port Moller RTI in Figure 2.6 (B). Because the run timing forecast is a relative index (Equation 2.4), better detection of changes in fluctuation magnitude would improve the forecast.

As an alternative index of run timing, I could use the slope of the line tangent to the fitted logistic curve (Equation 2.1) at $x=0$. A change in the initial slope of the fitted curve is correlated with that in RTI in Equation 2.2, and thus the choice of the initial slope would not change the current results. However, the slope unit is not time (day), so I prefer the current RTI to the initial slope.

The idea of the relative index of run timing (Equation 2.4) is the same as that of the run time parameter, $\beta$ in Equation 1.3 (the sub-section of 'Chum salmon run to Hood Canal in Puget Sound, Washington' under section 1.2.4). Applying the idea to the Bristol Bay sockeye salmon run was not successful. To estimate the run time parameter $\beta$, I needed to estimate not only three parameters ( $a, b$, and $c$ in Equation 1.5) but also total run size ( $N$ in Equation 1.5). The estimation of $c$, which is the proportion of fish caught by a test fishery on a day out of fish abundance available on the day, requires the prior knowledge of the day-specific proportion of total fish run size over the run season. In case of the Bristol Bay sockeye salmon, the proportion of total run size, which passes the Port Moller on a day, is very variable by year. Besides, the variance of the inseason estimate of total run size is usually large. The large variability in the day-specific proportion and the run size estimate prevented me from applying the idea of Springborn et al. (1998).

Figure 2.7 compares Hilborn's indices (see Introduction of this chapter) for years 1985 through 2001 with the yearly RTI of the lumped four district fish (excluding the Togiak fish). The correlation coefficient between them was 0.68 (Figure 2.7), which was smaller than that between the yearly Port Moller RTI evaluated at day code 20 (June 29) and those of the four district fish ( 0.76 in Figure 2.6). On the basis of the comparison of the correlation values ( 0.68 vs. 0.76 ), Port Moller RTI seems to be better than Hilborn's index. Another merit about Port Moller RTI is that we can estimate it on a daily basis (at any day). The calculation of Hilborn's index requires the Port Moller fishery data up to day code 21 (June 30).

Table 2.1. The Port Moller RTI estimates of years 1985 through 2001, and their standard deviations. The Port Moller fishery was not deployed in 1986. The RTI estimate was estimated with the cumulative Rogers' CPUE standardized at the final day of the fishery.

| Year | RTI | S.D. |
| ---: | ---: | ---: |
| 1985 | 17.7 | 0.2 |
| 1987 | 16.6 | 0.0 |
| 1988 | 17.8 | 0.1 |
| 1989 | 17.7 | 0.2 |
| 1990 | 19.0 | 0.1 |
| 1991 | 17.9 | 0.2 |
| 1992 | 17.4 | 0.2 |
| 1993 | 16.8 | 0.1 |
| 1994 | 20.1 | 0.1 |
| 1995 | 18.0 | 0.2 |
| 1996 | 18.0 | 0.2 |
| 1997 | 18.8 | 0.2 |
| 1998 | 20.3 | 0.2 |
| 1999 | 19.5 | 0.2 |
| 2000 | 14.5 | 0.2 |
| 2001 | 14.7 | 0.1 |

Table 2.2. The district-specific RTI estimates of years 1985 through 2001, and their standard deviations. The RTI estimate was estimated with the cumulative run size standardized at the final day of the return season. 'KN' denotes Kvichak-Naknek.

|  | KN |  | Egegik |  |  |  | Ugashik |  |  | Nushagak |  | Togiak |  |
| ---: | :---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Year | RTI | S.D. | RTI | S.D. | RTI | S.D. | RTI | S.D. | RTI | S.D. |  |  |  |
| 1985 | 26.5 | 0.2 | 24.1 | 0.1 | 29.4 | 0.1 | 26.8 | 0.2 | 34.9 | 0.3 |  |  |  |
| 1986 | 29.0 | 0.1 | 28.2 | 0.1 | 30.9 | 0.1 | 30.6 | 0.1 | 35.6 | 0.2 |  |  |  |
| 1987 | 30.2 | 0.1 | 25.2 | 0.1 | 32.8 | 0.2 | 26.8 | 0.2 | 36.7 | 0.2 |  |  |  |
| 1988 | 27.4 | 0.2 | 23.7 | 0.1 | 33.9 | 0.1 | 27.4 | 0.2 | 32.8 | 0.1 |  |  |  |
| 1989 | 24.8 | 0.1 | 25.4 | 0.1 | 32.2 | 0.1 | 25.2 | 0.1 | 34.3 | 0.3 |  |  |  |
| 1990 | 27.8 | 0.1 | 27.9 | 0.1 | 32.9 | 0.1 | 28.3 | 0.1 | 35.5 | 0.4 |  |  |  |
| 1991 | 26.6 | 0.2 | 26.9 | 0.1 | 32.5 | 0.1 | 27.0 | 0.1 | 38.6 | 0.2 |  |  |  |
| 1992 | 28.0 | 0.1 | 26.5 | 0.1 | 36.2 | 0.1 | 28.5 | 0.1 | 36.8 | 0.1 |  |  |  |
| 1993 | 23.3 | 0.1 | 21.7 | 0.1 | 29.4 | 0.1 | 23.3 | 0.0 | 33.1 | 0.2 |  |  |  |
| 1994 | 29.6 | 0.1 | 28.1 | 0.1 | 34.2 | 0.1 | 30.1 | 0.1 | 41.1 | 0.3 |  |  |  |
| 1995 | 27.4 | 0.1 | 25.4 | 0.1 | 33.4 | 0.3 | 25.9 | 0.1 | 40.1 | 0.2 |  |  |  |
| 1996 | 25.1 | 0.1 | 22.7 | 0.1 | 27.6 | 0.2 | 25.3 | 0.1 | 37.8 | 0.3 |  |  |  |
| 1997 | 28.4 | 0.1 | 23.9 | 0.1 | 30.5 | 0.1 | 27.2 | 0.1 | 34.4 | 0.4 |  |  |  |
| 1998 | 30.6 | 0.1 | 25.5 | 0.1 | 36.4 | 0.4 | 27.7 | 0.1 | 36.5 | 0.3 |  |  |  |
| 1999 | 27.7 | 0.2 | 25.2 | 0.2 | 32.8 | 0.1 | 27.6 | 0.2 | 40.6 | 0.1 |  |  |  |
| 2000 | 23.7 | 0.2 | 20.3 | 0.1 | 27.9 | 0.3 | 23.9 | 0.2 | 36.0 | 0.1 |  |  |  |
| 2001 | 21.6 | 0.1 | 19.7 | 0.1 | 30.8 | 0.2 | 22.7 | 0.1 | 35.7 | 0.1 |  |  |  |

Table 2.3. The inshore RTI estimates of years 1985 through 2001, and their standard deviations. They were estimated with the cumulative run size being standardized at the final day of the return season. 'All five' denotes the lumped five districts, and 'Four districts' means the lumped four districts where the Togiak fish were excluded.

|  | All five |  | Four districts |  |  |
| ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | :---: |
| Year | RTI | S.D. | RTI | S.D. |  |
| 1985 | 27.9 | 0.3 | 26.8 | 0.2 |  |
| 1986 | 30.5 | 0.2 | 29.7 | 0.1 |  |
| 1987 | 30.1 | 0.3 | 28.8 | 0.3 |  |
| 1988 | 29.1 | 0.3 | 28.3 | 0.3 |  |
| 1989 | 28.2 | 0.3 | 27.0 | 0.3 |  |
| 1990 | 30.1 | 0.2 | 29.2 | 0.2 |  |
| 1991 | 30.0 | 0.3 | 28.4 | 0.2 |  |
| 1992 | 31.1 | 0.4 | 29.9 | 0.4 |  |
| 1993 | 26.0 | 0.3 | 24.6 | 0.3 |  |
| 1994 | 32.2 | 0.3 | 30.6 | 0.2 |  |
| 1995 | 30.1 | 0.4 | 27.8 | 0.3 |  |
| 1996 | 27.1 | 0.4 | 25.2 | 0.2 |  |
| 1997 | 28.7 | 0.3 | 27.7 | 0.2 |  |
| 1998 | 31.0 | 0.4 | 30.0 | 0.4 |  |
| 1999 | 30.4 | 0.4 | 28.5 | 0.2 |  |
| 2000 | 26.1 | 0.4 | 23.9 | 0.2 |  |
| 2001 | 25.7 | 0.4 | 23.6 | 0.3 |  |

Table 2.4. The Port Moller RTI estimates of years 1985 through 2001 and their standard deviations, evaluated at day codes $10,15,20$, and 25 , respectively.

|  | Day code 10 |  |  | Day code 15 |  |  | Day code 20 |  |
| ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: |
| Day code 25 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Year | RTI | S.D. | RTI | S.D. | RTI | S.D. | RTI | S.D. |
| 1985 | 7.2 | 0.1 | 10.0 | 0.2 | 14.3 | 0.3 | 16.6 | 0.2 |
| 1987 | 7.2 | 0.3 | 12.2 | 0.2 | 15.5 | 0.1 | 16.3 | 0.1 |
| 1988 | 5.9 | 0.1 | 10.7 | 0.3 | 15.0 | 0.2 | 16.6 | 0.2 |
| 1989 | 7.2 | 0.2 | 10.4 | 0.2 | 13.4 | 0.2 | 16.3 | 0.2 |
| 1990 | 7.6 | 0.2 | 11.6 | 0.2 | 16.0 | 0.2 | 18.7 | 0.1 |
| 1991 | 8.2 | 0.2 | 11.8 | 0.1 | 13.6 | 0.1 | 15.7 | 0.2 |
| 1992 | 7.7 | 0.3 | 10.9 | 0.2 | 13.1 | 0.1 | 15.8 | 0.2 |
| 1993 | 6.7 | 0.1 | 10.0 | 0.2 | 12.7 | 0.2 | 15.7 | 0.2 |
| 1994 | 7.7 | 0.2 | 12.2 | 0.2 | 15.0 | 0.1 | 18.2 | 0.1 |
| 1995 | 7.1 | 0.2 | 9.6 | 0.1 | 13.1 | 0.2 | 15.8 | 0.2 |
| 1996 | 6.8 | 0.1 | 9.8 | 0.1 | 12.8 | 0.2 | 16.2 | 0.2 |
| 1997 | 7.0 | 0.2 | 10.6 | 0.2 | 13.9 | 0.2 | 17.0 | 0.2 |
| 1998 | 7.3 | 0.1 | 10.7 | 0.1 | 14.3 | 0.2 | 17.6 | 0.2 |
| 1999 | 7.1 | 0.4 | 11.9 | 0.2 | 14.4 | 0.1 | 17.3 | 0.1 |
| 2000 | 5.6 | 0.1 | 9.5 | 0.4 | 10.8 | 0.3 | 13.3 | 0.2 |
| 2001 | 7.3 | 0.2 | 9.7 | 0.1 | 12.2 | 0.1 | 14.0 | 0.1 |

Table 2.5. Relative index of fish run timing of years 1999, 2000, and 2001 evaluated at day codes, $15,20,25$, and 30 , respectively. The minus sign (-) indicates that run timing of the season is earlier than the average of those of the past years. These results are to be used in Chapters 3 and 4.

| Year | June 24 | June 29 | July 4 | July 9 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1999 | 1.1 | 0.4 | 0.6 | 1.3 |
| 2000 | -1.4 | -3.3 | -3.4 | -3.8 |
| 2001 | -1.1 | -1.6 | -2.4 | -3.3 |





Togiak


> Day code

Figure 2.1. Historical run proportions of five stocks against day. The data of years 1955 through 2001 are used except for the Togiak stock. The data of years 1955 through 1957 for the Togiak stock are not available.


## Day code

Figure 2.2. Port Moller Rogers' CPUE index against day by year. The Rogers' index unit is ' $(6,000 \times$ catch $) /[200$ fathoms $\times$ fishing time (min) $]$,' where 6,000 is a scale factor. I code calendar dates, starting on June 10: day code $1=$ June 10, day code $2=$ June 11, and so on.


Figure 2.3. The 1999 Port Moller RTI estimate. Dots represent the data of the 1999 cumulative Rogers' indices that are standardized at day code 30 (July 9). The solid line is the logistic curve fitted to the dots. I define RTI as day that corresponds to the inflection point of the fitted logistic curve. The inflection point of the curve is located at the coordinates of $(19.45,0.5)$, and the RTI estimate is 19.45 (square point).


Figure 2.4. Comparison of estimates of the Port Moller RTI of years 1985 through 2001 and those of the inshore RTI of the same period. Dots represent the Port Moller RTI estimates. Lines in the boxes of (A) through (F) indicate the RTI estimates of 'KvichakNaknek,' 'Egegik,' 'Ugashik,' 'Nushagak,' 'Togiak,' and 'the lumped five districts,' respectively. The numerical value above the respective box is the correlation coefficient between the dot line and the solid line within the box.


Figure 2.5. An example of forecasting run timing in year 2001 on June 24 (day code 15). When I want to detect run timing of the 2001 season at June 24, I standardize the cumulative Rogers' indices only up to the same day in the past years (before 2001), ignoring the data beyond the day. Intentionally I extend the $x$-axis beyond the day code 15 to show the idea. And then I compare the RTI estimate of the season (2001) with those of the past years. The vertical lines intersect the inflection points of the fitted logistic curves.
(A)

(B)


Year
Figure 2.6. (A): Yearly inshore RTI estimates of four stocks (excluding the Togiak stock). (B): Yearly Port Moller RTI estimates evaluated at five day codes 10 (dot line), 15 (circle line), 20 (triangle line), 25 (cross mark line), and 30 (square line). The numerical values on the five lines in the (B) box are the correlation coefficients between the respective line and the inshore RTI in the (A) box.


Figure 2.7. (A): Yearly inshore RTI estimates of four stocks (excluding the Togiak stock). (B): Yearly Hilborn RTI estimates. The correlation coefficient between the two lines is 0.68 .

# CHAPTER III. INSEASON FORECASTS OF RETURNS BY OPTIMIZATION 

## INTRODUCTION

The objective of this chapter is to estimate stock-specific run sizes on a daily basis. The term, 'stock' in this thesis means district-specific fish. I use all available data sources, with which I develop the objective functions of run sizes. The data sets include the following categories: (1) the catch of the Port Moller test fishery, (2) the age-specific proportions in the Port Moller fishery catch, (3) the catch of commercial and subsistence fisheries, (4) escapements, and (5) the age-specific proportions in stock-specific run size (= catch + escapement). In case of data categories (1), (3), and (4), I use not only the inseason data but also the historical data. We determine fish age by reading fish scales. ADFG collects scales of fish randomly chosen out of the Port Moller catch, the districtspecific catch and the escapement fish, and then reports the age-specific proportions on a daily basis.

The main method of this thesis is an optimization technique. As optimization software, I use Automatic Differentiation Model Builder (ADMB) (Anonymous 1994, 2000). ADMB has the following merits: (1) to estimate many parameters or many predictive variables in a non-linear model, (2) to provide not only point estimates but also their variances, (3) to be less sensitive to initial guess values of estimates than other optimization software, and (4) to calculate Bayes' posterior distributions of estimates.

## METHODS

### 3.1. DEFINITION OF TERMS

### 3.1.1. Variables, parameters, and objective functions

In defining variables and parameters over time, I follow the definitions by Gelman et al. (1995). Figure 3.1 shows the relationship between variables and parameters, the estimation of parameters, and the prediction of unobserved data. Parameters are involved with a function between explanatory variables and response variables. The estimation of parameters is based only on observed data. Once parameters are estimated, we are often interested in predicting 'unobserved response variables' from the function with the parameter estimates ${ }^{1}$ and explanatory variables. The unobserved response variables are called the 'predictive variables,' and thus the density or distribution of the predictive variables is called the predictive density or distribution. Gelman et al. (1995) add tilde mark $(\sim)$ to unobserved variables to distinguish them from observed variables. In this thesis, I estimate 20 predictive variables that are run sizes of five districts and four ages (Figure 3.2).

In section 3.4. 'Objective functions,' I develop the predictive densities of run sizes and the likelihood functions of run sizes. With the densities and likelihood functions of run sizes, we are interested in finding modes (run sizes) that maximize those functions. In this thesis, the objective function of run sizes means both the predictive density and the likelihood function. In most optimization software including ADMB, the objective function is used as its negative logarithm for ease of calculation. In this case, our interest is to find values that minimize the negative objective functions.

[^4]
### 3.2. NOTATIONS

The following list shows general notations used in this thesis. Notations valid only in a local subsection may not be found here.

| Notation | Description |
| :---: | :---: |
| $s$ | Stock (district)-specific fish. Five stocks were considered. Stock code 1 = Kvichak-Naknek; stock code 2 = Egegik; stock code 3 = Ugashik; stock code $4=$ Nushagak; and stock code $5=$ Togiak. |
| $a$ | Age. Four age groups were considered. Age code $1=$ age 1.2; age code $2=$ age 1.3; age code $3=$ age 2.2; and age code $4=$ age 2.3. |
| $r_{s, a}$ | Run size of stock $s$ and age $a$. |
| $r_{s,}$, | Stock-specific run size ignoring age: $r_{s, \bullet}=\sum_{a=1}^{4} r_{s, a}$ |
| $r_{\bullet, a}$ | Age-specific run size ignoring stock: $r_{\bullet, a}=\sum_{s=1}^{5} r_{s, a}$ |
| $R$ | Total run size. The sum of district- and age- specific run sizes: $R=\sum_{s=1}^{5} \sum_{a=1}^{4} r_{s, a}$ |
| $t$ | Time (day). Calendar dates were coded, starting on June 10: June $10=1$, June $11=2$, and so on. |
| $D_{t}$ | Rogers' index at day $t$. Rogers' index is the weighted CPUE from the Port Moller fishery (see Equation 1.1). |
| $I_{t}$ | The cumulative Rogers' index up to day $t$. |
| $\sim$ | Tilde mark ( $\sim$ ) refers to an unknown variable. For example, $R^{\prime}$ ' represents unknown (predictive) total run size while $R$ is known (observed) total run size. |
| $\wedge$ | Circumflex mark $\left(^{\wedge}\right)$ refers to the estimate of an unknown value such as a parameter or a predictive variable. For example, $\hat{\beta}$ is the estimate of $\beta$. |
| $U_{a, t}$ | The cumulative number of age $a$ fish caught by the Port Moller fishery up to day $t$. |


| $U_{\bullet, t}$ | The cumulative catch of the Port Moller fishery up to day $t$, ignoring age. |
| :--- | :--- |
| $G_{a}$ | The selectivity of the Port Moller gillnet fishery for age $a$ fish. |
| $k_{t}$ |  |
|  | The proportion of run size that pass a location of interest at day $t$; day- |
|  | specific proportion of run size. |

### 3.3. MAIN IDEA

The general idea of the methodology is as follows:
Step 1. I develop the objective functions (the predictive densities or the likelihood functions) of run sizes.

Step 2. I take the negative logarithms of the respective objective functions, and treat the sum of the negative logarithm functions as the joint objective function.

Step 3. With $\mathrm{ADMB}, \mathrm{I}$ look for run sizes, which minimize the joint objective function.
Step 4. I do the estimation of Step 3 on a daily basis during the season. As the inseason data are updated, the estimation is supposed to improve.

### 3.4. OBJECTIVE FUNCTIONS

### 3.4.1. Predictive density of total run size

Total run size means the sum of district- and age- specific runs in the 20 cells in Figure 3.2.

$$
\begin{equation*}
R=\sum_{s=1}^{5} \sum_{a=1}^{4} r_{s, a} \tag{3.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

The ordinary regression model between total run size and the cumulative Rogers' index is significant (Rogers and Steen 2000). I set up the ordinary regression model of total run size against the cumulative Rogers' index up to June 20 through July 6, respectively with the data of years 1985 through 2001 excluding the outlier years (1990, 1994, 1997, and 2001) (Figure 3.3). The determination coefficient $\left(R^{2}\right)$ of the regression model ranged from 0.65 to 0.82 (Figure 3.3). The 1986 Port Moller test fishery data were not available because the test fishery was not deployed in that year. I used the following ordinary regression model to develop the predictive density of total run size.

$$
\begin{align*}
& R=\beta_{0, t}+\beta_{1, t} \cdot I_{t}+\varepsilon_{t}  \tag{3.2}\\
& R \sim N\left(\beta_{0, t}+\beta_{1, t} \cdot I_{t}, \sigma_{t}^{2}\right)
\end{align*}
$$

where $R$ is the total run sizes of the past years, $I_{t}$ is the cumulative Rogers' indices of the corresponding historical years at day $t$, ' $\beta_{0, t}, \beta_{l, t}$, and $\sigma_{t}^{2}$ ' are parameters, and $\varepsilon_{t}$ is the error term. The expected value of $R$ is ' $\beta_{0, t}+\beta_{1, t} \cdot I_{t}$ ', and its variance is $\sigma_{t}{ }^{2}$. The estimates of these three parameters vary by day $t$, and thus the parameters have subscript $t$ in Equation 3.2.

When we have new catch data during the season and predict total run size of the year at day $t$, I use the empirical relationship of Equation 3.2. Thus, the predictive density of unknown variable $R$ (is normal.

$$
\begin{equation*}
f\left(R \varphi=\frac{1}{\sqrt{2 \pi \cdot \hat{\sigma}_{t}^{2}}} \exp \left[-\frac{\left(R^{0}\left(\hat{\beta}_{0, t}+\hat{\beta}_{1, t} \cdot I_{t}\right)\right)^{2}}{2 \cdot \hat{\sigma}_{t}^{2}}\right]\right. \tag{3.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

Taking the negative logarithm of the equation, and ignoring the constant terms with respect to $R^{\prime}$, we get the following:

$$
\begin{equation*}
-\ln f(\stackrel{\mathrm{\beta}}{\mathrm{r}}) \propto \frac{\left[\left(\sum_{s} \sum_{a} \mathcal{P}_{s, a}\right)-\hat{\beta}_{0, t}-\hat{\beta}_{1, t} \cdot I_{t}\right]^{2}}{2 \cdot \hat{\sigma}_{t}^{2}} \tag{3.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

I replaced $R^{\prime}$ ' by ' $\sum_{s=1}^{5} \sum_{a=1}^{4} \%_{s, a}$ ' in Equation 3.4.
' $2 \cdot \hat{\sigma}_{t}^{2}$ ' in the numerator of Equation 3.4 cannot be ignored though it is constant with respect to $R^{\prime}$ ! Only in the single Equation 3.4, the term is constant with respect to $R^{\prime}$ whereas it is not constant in the joint objective function. The term cannot be factored out from the joint objective function.

The following two illustrations may help readers understand the previous sentences.
(1) The following is a function of $x$, comparable to Equation 3.3.

$$
f_{1}(x)=\exp \left[-\frac{g(x)}{2 \cdot \sigma^{2}}\right]
$$

When taking the negative logarithm to the function $f_{1}(x)$, we have the following:

$$
-\ln f_{1}(x)=\frac{g(x)}{2 \cdot \sigma^{2}}
$$

' $2 \sigma^{2}$ ' is constant with respect to $x$ in this case.
(2) The following is the function $f_{1}(x)$ times another function of $x$.

$$
f_{1}(x) f_{2}(x)=\exp \left[-\frac{g(x)}{2 \cdot \sigma^{2}}\right] \cdot f_{2}(x)
$$

When taking the negative logarithm to the above function, we have the following:

$$
-\ln \left[f_{1}(x) f_{2}(x)\right]=\frac{g(x)}{2 \cdot \sigma^{2}}-\ln f_{2}(x)
$$

In this case, ' $2 \sigma^{2}$, cannot be factored out, and is not constant with respect to $x$.
Equation 3.4 is the first component of the joint objective function, where $I_{t}$ is the observed value (data), and ' $\hat{\beta}_{0, t}, \hat{\beta}_{1, t}$, and $\hat{\sigma}_{t}^{2}$ ' are the estimated values. I show the parameter estimation in sub-section, 3.5.1. 'Parameters in the predictive density of total run size.'

### 3.4.2. Likelihood function of age-specific run sizes

The ADFG used fish scales sampled from the Port Moller fishery catch to determine fish age. I found that the age composition of the Port Moller fishery catch generally matched that of returns to Bristol Bay. Figure 3.4 compares the proportions of four age groups (ages 1.2, 1.3, 2.2, and 2.3) of the Port Moller catch with those of returns to Bristol Bay. Regarding the Port Moller data in Figure 3.4, I used the fish only caught before July 5, because sockeye salmon caught after July 5 are likely to return to an area other than Bristol Bay (Hilborn, personal communication). In Figure 3.4, age-specific proportions of the Port Moller catch are similar to those of returns to Bristol Bay except for years 1997 and 1998.

I modeled the joint probability distribution of age-specific catches with the multinomial probability mass function. When $U_{a, t}$ denotes the age-specific cumulative catch of the Port Moller fishery up to day $t$, the joint probability of the age-specific cumulative catches is as follows.

$$
\begin{equation*}
f\left(\stackrel{\mathrm{r}}{t}^{\mathrm{U}}\right)=\frac{U_{\bullet, t}!}{\prod_{a=1}^{4}\left(U_{a, t}!\right)} \prod_{a=1}^{4}\left[P_{a, t}^{U_{a, t}}\right] \tag{3.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $P_{a, t}$ is the proportion of age $a$ fish out of the cumulative Port Moller catch up to day $t$. Equation 3.5 is also the likelihood function of $P_{a, t}$.

$$
\begin{equation*}
L\left(\stackrel{\mathrm{r}}{P_{t}}\right) \propto \prod_{a=1}^{4} P_{a, t} \tag{3.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

As the negative log-likelihood,

$$
\begin{equation*}
-l\left(\stackrel{\mathrm{r}}{t}^{)} \propto-\sum_{a=1}^{4}\left[U_{a, t} \cdot \ln \left(P_{a, t}\right)\right]\right. \tag{3.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

The maximum likelihood estimate (MLE) of the proportion in the multinomial distribution is as follows.

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{P}_{a, t}=\frac{U_{a, t}}{U_{\bullet, t}} \tag{3.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

I re-parameterized the age-specific proportion $P_{a, t}$ to have the function with respect to run sizes.

$$
\begin{align*}
\hat{P}_{a, t}= & \frac{U_{a, t}}{U \cdot, t}=\frac{U_{a, t}}{\sum_{a=1}^{4} U_{a, t}} \\
& =\frac{\sum_{d=1}^{t} r_{\bullet, a} \cdot k_{d} \cdot V \cdot G_{a}}{\sum_{a=1}^{4} \sum_{d=1}^{t} r_{\bullet, a} \cdot k_{d} \cdot V \cdot G_{a}}=\frac{r_{\bullet, a} \cdot G_{a}}{\sum_{a=1}^{4} r_{\bullet, a} \cdot G_{a}} \tag{3.9}
\end{align*}
$$

where $k_{d}$ is the proportion of run size that passes the Port Moller fishery area at day $d$ (day-specific proportion of run size), $V$ is fish vulnerability to the Port Moller fishery, and $G_{a}$ is the fishery selectivity for age $a$ fish. I assumed that $V$ and $G_{a}$ were constant regardless of day within a year. Fish vulnerability, $V$ may vary by year because ocean environmental variables are not constant by year. However, the uncertainty in the vulnerability $V$ does not cause a problem, because the vulnerability is canceled out in the numerator and the denominator (Equation 3.9). The gillnet gear selectivity for age 2.3 fish is assumed to be full (i.e. $G_{4}=1$ ), so there are three parameters: $G_{1}, G_{2}$, and $G_{3}$.

Replacing $P_{a, t,}$ in Equation 3.7 by that of Equation 3.9, I have the following likelihood function of run sizes:

By the invariance property of MLE (Zehna 1966), the estimates of $r_{0}$ in the new likelihood function also become MLE. Now, the original likelihood of age-specific proportions (Equation 3.7) becomes the likelihood of age-specific runs (Equation 3.10). Equation 3.10 is the second component of the joint objective function, where $U_{a, t}$ is the observed value (data) and $\hat{G}_{a}$ is the estimated value. I describe the estimation of $G_{1}, G_{2}$, and $G_{3}$ in sub-section '3.5.2. Parameters in the likelihood function of age-specific runs.'

### 3.4.3. Predictive density of stock-specific run size

Stock-specific run size means the sum of catch and escapement that belong to its district (Figure 1.2). In Figure 3.2, stock-specific run size is the row sum. That is,

$$
\begin{equation*}
r_{s, \bullet}=\sum_{a=1}^{4} r_{s, a} \tag{3.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

To forecast stock-specific run size at an arbitrary day (say $t$ ) during season, I used the cumulative run up to day $t$ during the season, and the historical cumulative proportions of the run at day $t$. If we observe the cumulative run data up to a day during the season, and know the cumulative proportion of the run at the day, we can estimate final run size by dividing the cumulative run by the proportion. I used historical data to calculate the cumulative proportion of run size by day. The run data of year 1955 through the present were available except for the Togiak stock (those of three years 1955, 1956 and 1957 were not available for the Togiak stock). Figure 2.1 shows the historical cumulative proportions of run sizes by day for the five stocks. Large variability in the proportion by day was found in all five stocks (Figure 2.1). When estimating final run size with the observed cumulative run of stock $s$ up to day $t$ and the historical cumulative run proportions at the day $t$, I used all the proportions rather than the mean value of the proportions to carry the variability in the proportion. That is,

$$
\begin{align*}
\stackrel{\mathrm{r}}{\hat{r}_{s, \bullet}} & =\frac{\text { observed cumulative run of stock } s \text { up to day } t \text { during the season }}{\text { historical cumulative proportions of the stock } s \text { run at day } t} \\
& =\frac{j_{s, \bullet, t}}{h_{s, t}}=\frac{j_{s, \bullet}}{\left\{h_{s, t, i} \mid i=\text { a past year }(1, \ldots, n)\right\}} \tag{3.12}
\end{align*}
$$

The numerator is a scalar value, and the denominator is a vector. Thus, the resultant
 $i$ th element out of the estimates of final run size of stock $s$.

I could consider the histogram of the run size estimates $\left(\hat{r}_{s, \bullet, i}\right)$ as an estimated distribution for stock-specific run size. For instance, Figure 3.5 shows distribution of the 1999 Egegik run size estimated at the specified day (June 24, June 30, July 6, July 12,

July 18, and July 24). In Figure 3.5, the distribution predicted at June 30 extends beyond the $x$-axis limit, but I don't show the part for the same scale of plots in the left column. In Figure 3.5, the dotted vertical line represents the actual run size of Egegik stock in year 1999. The variance of the predictive run distribution was small during the initial and final stage of the return season, while it was large during the middle of the season (Figure 3.5).

I explored various parametric densities to develop the distribution of $\hat{r}_{s, 0}:$ normal, gamma, lognormal, inverse Gaussian (Wald), and location gamma. The 'location gamma' density is named by me, and the term is not found in a statistics book.
(1) Normal

$$
\begin{align*}
& \text { If } r_{s, \bullet} \sim N\left(\mu_{s, t}, \sigma_{s, t}{ }^{2}\right), \\
& \qquad f\left(r_{s, \bullet}\right)=\frac{1}{\sqrt{2 \pi \cdot \sigma_{s, t}{ }^{2}}} \exp \left[-\frac{\left(r_{s, \bullet}-\mu_{s, t}\right)^{2}}{2 \cdot \sigma_{s, t}{ }^{2}}\right] \tag{3.13}
\end{align*}
$$

Though there is no limitation for the domain of a normal random variable, the domain of $r_{s, \bullet}$ is positive in this case. That is, $r_{s, \bullet}>0, \mu_{s, t}>0$, and $\sigma_{s, t}{ }^{2}>0$.
(2) Gamma

$$
\begin{align*}
& \text { If } r_{s, \bullet} \sim \operatorname{gamma}\left(\alpha_{s, t}, \beta_{s, t}\right) \\
& \qquad f\left(r_{s, \bullet}\right)=\frac{1}{\Gamma\left(\alpha_{s, t}\right) \cdot \beta_{s, t} \alpha_{s, t}} r_{s, \bullet}{ }^{\left(\alpha_{s, t}-1\right)} \cdot \exp \left(-\frac{r_{s, \bullet}}{\beta_{s, t}}\right) \tag{3.14}
\end{align*}
$$

where $r_{s, \bullet}>0, \alpha_{s, t}>0$, and $\beta_{s, t}>0$. Some statistics textbooks show a different gamma density from the above density by using different parameterization: i.e., $\beta^{*} \equiv(1 / \beta)$.

## (3) Lognormal

$$
\text { If } r_{s, \bullet} \sim \operatorname{lognormal}\left(\mu_{s, t}, \sigma_{s, t}{ }^{2}\right)
$$

$$
\begin{equation*}
f\left(r_{s, \bullet}\right)=\frac{1}{\sqrt{2 \pi \cdot \sigma_{s, t}{ }^{2}}} \cdot \frac{1}{r_{s, \bullet}} \cdot \exp \left[-\frac{\left(\ln r_{s, \bullet}-\mu_{s, t}\right)^{2}}{2 \cdot \sigma_{s, t}{ }^{2}}\right] \tag{3.15}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $r_{s, \bullet}>0,-\infty<\mu_{s, t}<\infty$, and $\sigma_{s, t}{ }^{2}>0$.
(4) Inverse Gaussian (Wald)

If $r_{s, \bullet} \sim$ inverse Gaussian $\left(\mu_{s, t}, \lambda_{s, t}\right)$,

$$
\begin{equation*}
f\left(r_{s, \bullet}\right)=\sqrt{\frac{\lambda_{s, t}}{2 \pi \cdot r_{s, \bullet}{ }^{3}}} \cdot \exp \left[\frac{-\lambda_{s, t} \cdot\left(r_{s, \bullet}-\mu_{s, t}\right)^{2}}{2 \cdot \mu_{s, t}{ }^{2} \cdot r_{s, \bullet}}\right] \tag{3.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $r_{s, \bullet}>0, \mu_{s, t}>0$, and $\lambda_{s, t}>0 . \mu_{s, t}$ is a measure of location and $\lambda_{s, t}$ is a reciprocal measure of dispersion. Equation 3.16 is a standard form of the inverse Gaussian distribution (Johnson and Kotz 1970, p. 138).
(5) Location gamma (ad hoc term)

When the parameter $\alpha$ in the ordinary gamma density (Equation 3.14) is large, we can never have an asymmetric gamma distribution. As the value of $\alpha$ increases, the shape of a gamma density becomes a symmetric shape. If a random variable, say $T$, is exponential (i.e. $T \sim \varepsilon(\beta)$ ), then the random variable is also a gamma variable where the parameter $\alpha$ of the gamma distribution is 1 (i.e. $T \sim \operatorname{gamma}(1, \beta))$. When $T_{i}$ are independent, $\sum_{i=1}^{\alpha} T_{i} \sim \operatorname{gamma}(\alpha, \beta)$. Thus when the value of $\alpha$ is large, the sum of $T_{i}$ should approach a normal (symmetric) distribution by the central limit theorem.

To overcome this problem where an ordinary gamma density with a large value of $\alpha$ cannot be asymmetric, first I shifted the distribution of $\dot{\hat{r}}_{s, 0}$. in Equation 3.12 by subtracting the minimum value of $\frac{1}{\hat{r}_{s,}}$, from all values of $\frac{1}{\hat{r}_{s,}}$. The shift changes only the location of the distribution but not its shape. I fit an ordinary gamma density to the 'shifted' distribution of $\frac{1}{\hat{r}_{s,}}$; I calculated two parameters of the ordinary gamma density with the shifted data. The parameter value $\alpha$ estimated in the shifted distribution was
small enough to produce an asymmetric shape. After fitting an ordinary gamma density to the shifted distribution, I moved both the gamma density and the shifted distribution of $\hat{r}_{s,}$, back to its original site. Thus, the modified gamma density has one more parameter besides the original two parameters, $\alpha$ and $\beta$. The additional parameter was the minimum value of the original values, ${\stackrel{1}{\hat{r}_{s}}, \bullet}$. I call the modified gamma density the location gamma density. Figure 3.6 illustrates the procedure that I have described so far. The histogram in Figure 3.6 is the 1999 Egegik run distribution estimated at day code 30 (July 9) by Equation 3.12. In Figure 3.6, even without doing a goodness of fit test, we can see that the location gamma density fits a very skewed distribution much better than the ordinary gamma density.

I formalize the location gamma density as follows. If $r_{s, \bullet} \sim$ location $\operatorname{gamma}\left(\alpha_{s, t}, \beta_{s, t}, \gamma_{s, t}\right)$, where

$$
\begin{equation*}
\gamma_{s, t}=\min \left[\stackrel{r}{\mathrm{r}}\left[\hat{r}_{s, \bullet}\right]=\min \left[\frac{\dot{j}_{\mathrm{f}}, \bullet, t}{h_{s, t}}\right]\right. \tag{3.17}
\end{equation*}
$$

I shift the frequency distribution of $\hat{r}_{s, 0}$ in Equation 3.12 by subtracting $\gamma_{s, t}$ from each of $\hat{r}_{s, 0}$. That is,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(\frac{\mathrm{r}}{\hat{r}_{s, \bullet}}-\gamma_{s, t}\right)=\left(\frac{j_{s, \cdot t}}{h_{s, t}}-\min \left[\frac{j_{s, ~}, t}{h_{s, t}}\right]\right) \tag{3.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

The parameters $\alpha_{s, t}$ and $\beta_{s, t}$ are estimated with the shifted vector, ' ${ }^{1} \hat{r}_{s, \bullet}-\gamma_{s, t}$ '. Thus, a location Gamma density with $\alpha, \beta$, and $\gamma$ is an ordinary gamma density shifted by $\gamma$.
Letting $f^{*}$ be an ordinary gamma density, I express a location gamma density $f$ as follows.

$$
\begin{align*}
f\left(r_{s, \bullet}\right) & =f^{*}\left(r_{s, \bullet}-\gamma_{s, t}\right) \\
& =\frac{1}{\Gamma\left(\alpha_{s, t}\right) \cdot \beta_{s, t}^{\alpha_{s, t}}}\left(r_{s, \bullet}-\gamma_{s, t}\right)^{\left(\alpha_{s, t}-1\right)} \cdot \exp \left[-\frac{\left(r_{s, \bullet}-\gamma_{s, t}\right)}{\beta_{s, t}}\right], \text { if } r_{s, \bullet} \geq \gamma_{s, t}  \tag{3.19}\\
& =0 \text {, otherwise }
\end{align*}
$$

## Evaluation of the five parametric densities

I used Kolmogorov-Smirnov goodness of fit test to evaluate the above five densities. As an example, I fit the five densities to the 1999 Egegik run distribution predicted at day codes 15 (June 24), 20 (June 29), 25 (July 4), 30 (July 9), 35 (July 14), and 40 (July 19), respectively. Table 3.1 shows the results of the K-S test for those densities fitted to the 1999 Egegik run distribution; the larger p-value is, the better the fit is. The lognormal density shape always turned out to be almost identical to that of the inverse Gaussian density, so I did not distinguish them differently. Figure 3.7 shows an example where the five densities are fitted to the 1999 Egegik run distribution estimated at day code 30 (July 9). For the distribution estimated at the initial stage of the season (day codes 15 and 20), the best fit was the lognormal density (or the inverse Gaussian density) (p-values 0.581 , and 0.245 in Table 3.1) while, for the distribution estimated at other days (day codes 25,30 , and 35 ), the best fit was the location gamma density (pvalues $0.570,0.655$, and 0.400 in Table 3.1). For the distribution estimated at day code 40 , every density fit poorly (p-values $0.009,0.001,0.000$, and 0.001 in Table 3.1). The poor fit was due to a very narrow distribution around the mode of the run estimates. The run distribution estimated near the season end was extremely narrowed (e.g., in Figure 3.5, the run distributions estimated at July 18 and July 24). However, the poor fit is not a problem, because the run size near the season end becomes so obvious that we don't need to forecast it.

Generally the location gamma density and the lognormal density (or the inverse Gaussian density) fit the predicted distribution of stock-specific run size well. Figure 3.8 represents the average value of p -values of five tests in Table 3.1, except for the last test for the distribution predicted at day code 40 . The location gamma density and the lognormal (or the inverse Gaussian) density were much better than the gamma density and the normal density in terms of goodness of fit (Figure 3.8). However, I had a problem in ADMB programming when I used the location gamma density for the predictive density of stock-specific run size. The location gamma density was defined over two separate domains (Equation 3.19). The separation prevented ADMB from
differentiating the location gamma density with respect to run size over the smooth continuous domain.

This situation compelled me to use the lognormal density or the inverse Gaussian density for the predictive density of stock-specific run size. However, the lognormal density is more common than the inverse Gaussian, and the former density is implemented in most statistical software. Thus, I chose the lognormal density. Taking the negative logarithm of the lognormal density (Equation 3.15) and ignoring constants with respect to run size, we have the following.

$$
\begin{equation*}
-\ln f\left(\mathcal{\rho}_{s, \mathbf{b}}\right) \propto\left[\ln {\underset{s}{s, \mathbf{6}}}^{\rho /}+\frac{\left(\ln \hat{\beta}_{s, \mathbf{b}}-\hat{\mu}_{s, t}\right)^{2}}{2 \cdot \hat{\sigma}_{s, t}{ }^{2}}\right] \tag{3.20}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\mu_{s, 6}>0,-\infty<\hat{\mu}_{s, t}<\infty$, and $\hat{\sigma}_{s, t}{ }^{2}>0$. Equation 3.20 is another component of the joint objective function. Because there were five districts, I had to consider the respective five lognormal objective functions. $\hat{\mu}_{s, t}$ and $\hat{\sigma}_{s, t}{ }^{2}$ are estimates of $\mu_{s, t}$ and $\sigma_{s, t}{ }^{2}$, and I describe the estimation in sub-section, '3.5.3. Parameters in the predictive density of stock-specific run size.'

### 3.4.4. Likelihood function of stock- and age- specific run sizes

Age composition from stock-specific run data was also available. I applied the multinomial mass function to the joint probability distribution of stock- and age- specific proportions. The principle is the same as that of the likelihood function of age-specific proportions in the Port Moller fishery catch (Equation 3.5). That is, the joint probability distribution of the cumulative stock-specific and age-specific runs is:

$$
\begin{equation*}
f\left(\stackrel{\mathrm{j}}{s, t}^{\mathrm{r}}\right)=\frac{j_{s, \bullet, t}!}{\prod_{a=1}^{4}\left(j_{s, a, t}!\right)} \prod_{a=1}^{4}\left[P_{s, a, t}^{j_{s, a, t}}\right] \tag{3.21}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $j_{s, a, t}$ is the cumulative run of age $a$ fish to district $s$ up to day $t$, and $P_{s, a, t}$ is the proportion of age $a$ fish out of the cumulative run to district $s$ up to day $t$. Equation 3.21 also is the likelihood function of $P_{s, a, t}$.

$$
\begin{equation*}
L\left(\stackrel{\mathrm{r}}{s, t}^{\mathrm{r}}\right) \propto \prod_{a=1}^{4}\left[P_{s, a, t} \stackrel{j}{s, a, t}\right] \tag{3.22}
\end{equation*}
$$

Considering the MLE of $P_{s, a, t}$ and re-parameterizing it with run sizes of interest, we have the following.

$$
\begin{align*}
\hat{P}_{s, a, t} & =\frac{j_{s, a, t}}{j_{s, \bullet}, t}=\frac{j_{s, a, t}}{\sum_{a} j_{s, a, t}} \\
& =\frac{\sum_{d=1}^{t} r_{s, a} \cdot k_{d}}{\sum_{a} \sum_{d=1}^{t} r_{s, a} \cdot k_{d}}=\frac{r_{s, a}}{\sum_{a} r_{s, a}} \tag{3.23}
\end{align*}
$$

where $k_{d}$ is the proportion of run size that enters district $s$ at day $d$ (day-specific proportion of district-specific run size). Finally, I replaced the proportion in the likelihood function (Equation 3.22) by the relation in Equation 3.23, and took the negative logarithm of the function:

$$
\begin{equation*}
-l\left(\mathrm{f}_{s}\right) \propto-\sum_{a=1}^{4}\left[j_{s, a, t} \cdot \ln \left(\frac{\mathrm{p}_{s, a}}{\sum_{a}^{\rho_{s, a} / a}}\right)\right] \tag{3.24}
\end{equation*}
$$

In Equation 3.24, $j_{s, a, t}$ is observed data, and $\mu_{s, a}$ is the predictive variable in the objective function. In this case, I did not consider the fishery selectivity for age-specific fish because run data were not only from the gillnet fishery but also from research beach seines. Equation 3.24 is the last component of the joint objective function. I had to consider the respective five multinomial objective functions because there were five districts.

Table 3.2 contains the summary of the objective functions I have described so far. The joint objective function is the sum of the negative logarithms of the respective twelve objective functions: Equation 3.4, Equation 3.10, five of Equation 3.20, and five of Equation 3.24.

### 3.5. PARAMETERS

There were 16 parameters in the objective functions: three in the predictive density of total run size (Equation 3.4), three in the likelihood function of age-specific runs (Equation 3.10), and 10 in the predictive densities of the respective five stock-specific runs (five Equation 3.20 for each stock).

### 3.5.1. Parameters in the predictive density of total run size

The predictive density of total run size was normal (Equation 3.4). It had three parameters: $\sigma_{t}^{2}, \beta_{0, t}$, and $\beta_{1, t}$. The likelihood function of these three parameters is:

$$
\begin{equation*}
L\left(\beta_{0, t}, \beta_{1, t}, \sigma_{t}^{2}\right) \propto \prod_{i=1}^{n} \frac{1}{\sqrt{\sigma_{t}^{2}}} \exp \left[-\frac{\left(\left(\sum_{s} \sum_{a} r_{s, a, i}\right)-\beta_{0, t}-\beta_{1, t} \cdot I_{t, i}\right)^{2}}{2 \cdot \sigma_{t}^{2}}\right] \tag{3.25}
\end{equation*}
$$

' $\left(\sum_{s} \sum_{a} r_{s, a, i}\right)$ ' is total run size of past year $i$, and $I_{t, i}$ is the cumulative Rogers' index at day $t$ of the corresponding year $i$. As the negative log likelihood,

$$
\begin{equation*}
-l\left(\beta_{0, t}, \beta_{1, t}, \sigma_{t}^{2}\right) \propto\left[\frac{n}{2} \cdot \ln \sigma_{t}^{2}+\frac{1}{2 \cdot \sigma_{t}^{2}} \sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(\left(\sum_{s} \sum_{a} r_{s, a, i}\right)-\beta_{0, t}-\beta_{1, t} \cdot I_{t, i}\right)^{2}\right] \tag{3.26}
\end{equation*}
$$

Though the formulae for ML estimators of the parameters were not necessary due to the benefit of ADMB, I derived them to check the parameter units. After differentiating the above negative log likelihood with respect to the three parameters, and setting them equal to zero,

$$
\frac{\partial(-l)}{\partial \beta_{0, t}}=0 ; \quad \frac{\partial(-l)}{\partial \beta_{1, t}}=0 ; \quad \frac{\partial(-l)}{\partial \sigma_{t}^{2}}=0
$$

I solved these equations for the parameters. The solutions are as follows:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{\beta}_{1, t}=\frac{\sum_{i}\left[\left(I_{t, i}-\frac{\sum_{i} I_{t, i}}{n}\right)\left(\sum_{s} \sum_{a} r_{s, a, i}-\frac{\sum_{i} \sum_{s} \sum_{a} r_{s, a, i}}{n}\right)\right]}{\sum_{i}\left(I_{t, i}-\frac{\sum_{i} I_{t, i}}{n}\right)^{2}} \tag{3.27}
\end{equation*}
$$

$$
\begin{gather*}
\hat{\beta}_{0, t}=\frac{\sum_{i} \sum_{s} \sum_{a} r_{s, a, i}}{n}-\hat{\beta}_{1, t} \cdot \frac{\sum_{i} I_{t, i}}{n}  \tag{3.28}\\
\hat{\sigma}_{t}^{2}=\frac{\sum_{i}\left[\left(\sum_{s} \sum_{a} r_{s, a, i}\right)-\hat{\beta}_{0, t}-\hat{\beta}_{1, t} \cdot I_{t, i}\right]^{2}}{n} \tag{3.29}
\end{gather*}
$$

Thus, the units of $\beta_{l, t}, \beta_{0, t}$ and $\sigma_{t}^{2}$ are:

$$
\begin{align*}
& \mathbb{Q}_{1, t} \overparen{\mathbb{R}}=\frac{\text { fish run size }}{\text { Rogers' index }}  \tag{3.30}\\
& { }_{\ll}^{C} \beta_{1, t} \overline{\mathbb{R}}=\text { fish run size }  \tag{3.31}\\
& { }_{\ll}^{\mathbb{C}} \sigma_{t}^{2} \overparen{\mathbb{R}}=(\text { fish run size })^{2} \tag{3.32}
\end{align*}
$$

where ' $\S^{\bullet \cdot}$ ' denotes the unit notation.
Note that, in the above likelihood function (Equation 3.26), there is no tilde mark $(\sim)$ for $r_{s, a, i}$, because they are observed values, not predictive values.

### 3.5.2. Parameters in the likelihood function of age-specific runs

I had three parameters of $G_{1}, G_{2}$, and $G_{3}$ in the likelihood function of age-specific runs (Equation 3.10). Subscripts 1, 2, and 3 are age code. These parameters are the Port Moller fishery selectivity for age-specific fish. In case of the selectivity for age 2.3 fish, the full selectivity is assumed: i.e. $G_{4}=1$ where subscript 4 is the age 2.3 code. The following is the likelihood function of the parameters:

$$
\begin{equation*}
L(\stackrel{\mathrm{r}}{G}) \propto \prod_{i=1}^{n} \prod_{a=1}^{4}\left[\frac{r_{\bullet, a, i} \cdot G_{a}}{\sum_{a} r_{\bullet, a, i} \cdot G_{a}}\right]^{U_{a, i}} \tag{3.33}
\end{equation*}
$$

$r_{\bullet, a, i}$ is age-specific run size of past year $i$, and $U_{a, i}$ is age-specific catch from the Port Moller fishery in the corresponding year $i$. I assumed that the selectivity is constant by time (year as well as day), so $G$ did not have a time subscript. As the negative log likelihood, Equation 3.33 becomes the following.

$$
\begin{equation*}
-l(\stackrel{\mathrm{r}}{G}) \propto-\sum_{i=1}^{n} \sum_{a=1}^{4}\left[U_{a, i} \cdot \ln \left(\frac{r_{\bullet a, i} \cdot G_{a}}{\sum_{a} r_{\cdot, a, i} \cdot G_{a}}\right)\right] \tag{3.34}
\end{equation*}
$$

Differentiating the above negative log likelihood with respect to $G_{a}$, and setting it equal zero, I have an implicit equation for $G_{a}$. However, the derivation for checking the parameter units is not needed because the selectivity is a fraction whose range is from 0 to 1 .
$r_{\cdot a, i}$ in the above likelihood function (Equation 3.34) does not have a tilde mark( $\sim$ ) because they are observed values.

### 3.5.3. Parameters in the predictive density of stock-specific run size

The predictive density of stock-specific run size was lognormal (Equation 3.20). It had two parameters in the predictive density for each stock ( $\sigma_{s, t}{ }^{2}$ and $\mu_{s, t}$ ), so there were five pairs (i.e., 10 parameters) for five stocks. The likelihood function of those two parameters is:

$$
\begin{equation*}
L\left(\mu_{s, t}, \sigma_{s, t}{ }^{2}\right) \propto \prod_{i=1}^{n} \frac{1}{\sqrt{\sigma_{s, t}{ }^{2}}} \exp \left[-\frac{\left(\ln \hat{r}_{s, \cdot, i}-\mu_{s, t}\right)^{2}}{2 \cdot \sigma_{s, t}{ }^{2}}\right] \tag{3.35}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\hat{r}_{s,, i}$ is an $i$ th element out of the estimates of final run size of stock $s$ (Equation 3.12). As the negative log likelihood, Equation 3.35 becomes the following:

$$
\begin{equation*}
-l\left(\mu_{s, t}, \sigma_{s, t}{ }^{2}\right) \propto\left[\frac{n}{2} \ln \sigma_{s, t}{ }^{2}+\frac{1}{2 \cdot \sigma_{s, t}{ }^{2}} \sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(\ln \hat{r}_{s, \bullet, i}-\mu_{s, t}\right)^{2}\right] \tag{3.36}
\end{equation*}
$$

I differentiated the above negative log likelihood with respect to the two parameters, set them equal to zero,

$$
\frac{\partial(-l)}{\partial \mu_{s, t}}=0 ; \quad \frac{\partial(-l)}{\partial \sigma_{s, t}{ }^{2}}=0
$$

and solved these equations for the parameters. I had the following solutions:

$$
\begin{gather*}
\hat{\mu}_{s, t}=\frac{\sum_{i} \ln \left(\hat{r}_{s, \bullet i}\right)}{n}  \tag{3.37}\\
\hat{\sigma}_{s, t}{ }^{2}=\frac{\sum_{i}\left(\ln \hat{r}_{s, \cdot i}-\hat{\mu}_{s, t}\right)^{2}}{n} \tag{3.38}
\end{gather*}
$$

Thus, the units of $\mu_{s, t}$, and $\sigma_{s, t}{ }^{2}$ are:

$$
\begin{gather*}
\mathbb{C} \mu_{s, t} \overrightarrow{\mathbb{R}}=\ln (\text { fish run size })  \tag{3.39}\\
\lll \sigma_{s, t}{ }^{2} \overparen{\mathbb{R}}=[\ln (\text { fish run size })]^{2} \tag{3.40}
\end{gather*}
$$

The estimation of $\mu_{s, t}$, and $\sigma_{s, t}{ }^{2}$ are involved not only with historical data $\left(h_{s, t, i}\right)$ but also with inseason data $\left(j_{s,, t}\right)$ (recall Equation 3.12), while the estimation of the other parameters $\left(\beta_{l, t}, \beta_{0, t}, \sigma_{t}^{2}, G_{1}, G_{2}\right.$, and $G_{3}$ ) requires only historical data.

### 3.6. INCORPORATION OF RUN TIMING FORECAST

In Chapter 2, I forecasted fish run timing with Port Moller fishery data. According to run timing forecast, I use historical data that belong to a different day from a forecast day. Figure 3.9 illustrates the idea. Normally, when forecasting run sizes at day $t$ during the season, I estimate parameters with historical data that correspond to day $t$ in past years, and then predict run sizes with the estimates of parameters and inseason data (Figure 3.9 (A)). If I detect run timing earlier or later by $q$ days, I use historical data that correspond to day ' $t \pm q$ ' in past years (Figure 3.9 (B)).

There are three historical data sources: (1) total run size of year $i\left(\sum_{s} \sum_{a} r_{s, a, i}\right)$, (2) the cumulative Rogers' CPUE up to day $t$ in year $i\left(I_{t, i}\right)$, and (3) the cumulative proportion of run size of stock s at day $t$ in year $i\left(h_{s, t, i}\right)$. The values of the first two sources $\left(\sum_{s} \sum_{a} r_{s, a, i}\right.$ and $I_{t, i}$ ) determine the estimates of $\beta_{0, t}, \beta_{1, t}$, and $\sigma_{t}^{2}$ in the normal predictive density of total run size (Equations 3.27, 3.28, and 3.29). The values of the third historical data source $\left(h_{s, t, i}\right)$ and the observed cumulative run of stock $s$ up to day $t$
during the season $\left(j_{s,, t}\right)$ determine the estimates of the five pairs of $\mu_{s, t}$ and $\sigma_{s, t}{ }^{2}$ in the respective lognormal predictive densities of stock-specific run sizes (Equations 3.37 and 3.38, where $\left.\hat{r}_{s, \bullet, i}=j_{s,, t} / h_{s, t, i}\right) . \quad G_{l}, G_{2}$, and $G_{3}$ in the likelihood function of age-specific run sizes are not affected by the run timing incorporation because the three parameters are constant over time.

For example, if I make forecasts of the 2000 run sizes at July 4, I use the historical data of $I_{t, i}$ and $h_{s, t, i}$ that correspond to July 7 not to July 4: i.e. $t=$ July 7 , and $i=$ years prior to forecast year 2000. The 2000 Port Moller RTI evaluated at July 4 was earlier by about three days than the average of those in the past years (-3.4 in Table 2.5).

## RESULTS

By the hind-casting procedure, I made forecasts of returns of years 1999, 2000, and 2001 at the following days per season (year): day codes 15 (June 24), 20 (June 29), 25 (July 4) and 30 (July 9).

### 3.7. PARAMETER ESTIMATES

Tables 3.4, 3.5 and 3.6 show the MLEs and standard deviations for parameter estimates, calculated with the likelihood functions in section '3.5. Parameters.' The units of parameter estimates are summarized in Table 3.4. The MLEs are used when forecasting returns of years 1999 (Table 3.4), 2000 (Table 3.5), and 2001 (Table 3.6). The respective table has mainly two columns: 'With' and 'Without.' The values under the 'With' column were estimated with the run timing incorporation, while those under the 'Without' column were estimated without the incorporation. The units of the estimates are shown in Table 3.5. Regarding the Port Moller fishery selectivity for age specific fish $\left(G_{a}\right)$, I show the estimates only once per table because the values are constant by day within a season. In case of forecasting the 1999 returns at June 29, the parameter estimates and the run forecasts under the 'With' column were the same as
those under the 'Without' column (Table 3.4), because the Port Moller RTI detected at June 29, 1999 was almost the same as the average of those in the past years ( 0.4 in Table 2.5).

### 3.8. FORECASTS OF RETURNS

Tables 3.7 through 3.12 show forecasts of stock- and age- specific returns. The marginal values under the 'sum' column indicate the stock-specific run forecasts, in which ADFG managers are most interested. Tables $3.13,3.14$ and 3.15 compare the stock-specific run forecasts with the actual run sizes, where the difference between the forecast and the actual run size is expressed as relative error (\%):

$$
\begin{equation*}
\text { Relative error }(\%)=\left(\frac{\text { forecast }- \text { actual run }}{\text { actual run }}\right) \times 100 \tag{3.41}
\end{equation*}
$$

The minus (-) sign in an error value indicates an under-forecast.
Generally forecasts (run estimates) approached their actual run sizes as time progressed (Tables 3.13, 3.14, and 3.15; Figures 3.10, 3.11, and 3.12). Absolute values of errors in forecasts made at day code 15 (June 24) ranged from about $5 \%$ to about $640 \%$, and those in forecasts made at day code 30 (July 9) ranged from about $1 \%$ to about $60 \%$. Forecasts of returns to Togiak district had larger errors than those to the other districts.

### 3.8.1. Incorporation of run timing forecast

Forecasts of returns with the run timing incorporation were generally less biased than those without the incorporation, except for forecasts of the 1999 runs and of the Ugashik and Togiak returns. Tables 3.13, 3.14, and 3.15 have forecasts of stock-specific returns for years 1999, 2000, and 2001, which were calculated with the run timing incorporation and without the incorporation, respectively. Figures 3.10, 3.11, and 3.12 show the respective summary of Tables $3.13,3.14$, and 3.15. In those three figures, the horizontal dotted line represents the actual run size, and cross mark $(\times)$ points are forecasts of returns with the run timing incorporation while square marks are those
without the incorporation. In case of the 1999 run forecasts (Figure 3.10), differences between cross marks and square marks are not significant because the Port Moller RTI of 1999 was almost the same as the average of those of the past years $(1.1,0.4,0.6$, and 1.3 in Table 2.5). However, in case of the 2000 and 2001 run forecasts (Figures 3.11 and 3.12), cross marks are closer to the actual run size than square marks, except for the Ugashik and Togiak stocks.

### 3.8.2. Incorporation of the Port Moller fishery selectivity for age-specific fish

The incorporation of the Port Moller fishery selectivity for age-specific fish did not improve forecasts of returns. Tables 3.16, 3.17, and 3.18 have the 1999, 2000, and 2001 run forecasts, which were calculated with the selectivity incorporation and without the incorporation, respectively. When I estimated forecasts of returns ignoring the selectivity, I let the selectivity parameters one: i.e. $G_{I}=G_{2}=G_{3}=1$. The forecast error values (\%) under the 'With' column were not significantly different from those under the 'Without' column (Tables 3.16, 3.17, and 3.18). In both cases, I incorporated the run timing forecast accordingly.

Also the selectivity incorporation did not affect age composition (proportion) in forecasts of returns. In Figures 3.13 (forecasts of the 1999 returns made at July 4), 3.14 (forecasts of the 2000 returns made at July 4), and 3.15 (forecasts of the 2001 returns made at July 4), age-specific proportions in the forecasts made with the selectivity incorporation (solid lines) are compared with those made without the selectivity (dashed lines). In case of the 'Port Moller' boxes in those figures, the lines represent age composition in forecasts of age-specific run sizes $\left(r_{:, a}\right)$. Dots indicate age composition in observed values (under the 'Port Moller' label, dots are those in the cumulative Port Moller catch up to July 4; under the district name, dots are those in the observed cumulative run to the corresponding district up to July 4). In Figures 3.13, 3.14, and 3.15, solid lines and dashed lines are very close to each other, and they match dots well. Tables 3.19, 3.20, and 3.21 show the proportion values used to draw Figures 3.13, 3.14, and 3.15.

## DISCUSSION

### 3.9. ASSUMPTION OF THE JOINT OBJECTIVE FUNCTION

It would be vulnerable to criticism to treat the joint objective function as the product of the respective objective functions (in the logarithm, as the sum of the respective objective functions). The treatment is based on the assumption where data sets in the joint objective function are independent of one another. The following is the joint probability function of the respective data sets where district- and age- specific run sizes are involved as predictive variables or parameters.

$$
\begin{align*}
& \operatorname{Pr}\left(\operatorname{data}_{1}, \operatorname{data}_{2}, \ldots, \operatorname{data}_{\mathrm{k}}\right) \\
& =\prod_{i=1}^{k} \operatorname{Pr}\left(\text { data }_{\mathrm{i}}\right) \quad(\mathrm{Q} \text { independence }) \tag{3.42}
\end{align*}
$$

Each ' $\operatorname{Pr}\left(\right.$ data $\left._{\mathrm{i}}\right)$ ' is the respective objective function before the transformation of the negative logarithm: Equations 3.3, 3.5, 3.15, and 3.21, respectively (also see Equation 4.2 for a different expression).

Rigorously speaking, the independence assumption in Equation 3.42 is not correct. For example, the age composition data of the Port Moller fishery catch are not independent of those of observed run sizes to the five districts. However, the catch of the Port Moller test fishery is usually small, and the catch abundance is not correlated with the observed run sizes especially during the initial stage of the season. Also the run size and age composition of each district are independent of those of the other. Thus, the violation of independence is not serious.

### 3.10. SAMPLE SIZE IN THE MULTINOMIAL PROBABILITY FUNCTION

Another obstacle to forecasts of returns was data sizes in the multinomial likelihood functions: $U_{\bullet, t}=\sum_{a} U_{a, t}$ in Equation 3.5, and $r_{s, \cdot t}=\sum_{a} r_{s, a, t}$ in Equation 3.21. It is an inherent problem that occurs when a probability distribution of age composition (age-specific groups in number or proportion) from fisheries data is assumed
as a multinomial distribution. Usually the sampling designs deployed to collect data, along with the selection protocols utilized in the field, generate estimates of age composition that necessarily depart, to some degree, from a strictly theoretical multinomial distribution (Crone and Sampson 1998). The expanse and dynamics of fisheries prevent us from sampling in a strictly random manner.

Thus, we are advised not to use a real catch size but to scale down the size for total sample size in a multinomial probability (Crone and Sampson 1998). If I used the real data size (the real catch for $U_{\bullet, t}$ in Equation 3.5, and the real run for $j_{s, \bullet, t}$ in Equation 3.21), I would give an over-weight to the multinomial objective function. As a result, the multinomial objective function would dominate the joint objective function. A question would be raised in response to the advice: 'how much should we scale down the sample size?' or 'what is the optimum sample size that most accurately describes the actual variability associated with the sample estimates of age composition?' To determine the optimum sample size, Crone and Sampson (1998) used weighted nonlinear regression analysis with the actual variance measures (e.g. CV) associated with the sample estimates (proportions) of age composition. However, I could not apply the idea because of absence of the data. By a process of trial and error, I set the sizes. Fortunately, estimates of age-specific proportions in Port Moller catch and stock-specific run sizes turned out to be extremely close to the observed values (Figures 3.13, 3.14, and 3.15). Also, forecasts of returns approached the actual returns as forecast time progressed during the season (Figures 3.10, 3.11, and 3.12); forecasts made at day code 30 (July 9) were close to the actual returns.

### 3.11. SELECTIVITY OF THE PORT MOLLER GILLNET FISHERY

Because the incorporation of the Port Moller fishery selectivity $\left(G_{a}\right)$ for agespecific fish did not reduce bias in forecasts of runs, the parameters did not draw attention. However, the estimates of $G_{a}$ may be useful for other research. There appears to be no formal report regarding the selectivity of the Port Moller gillnet gear. I succeeded in finding MLE of $G_{a}$, assuming the full selectivity for age 2.3 fish $\left(G_{4}=1\right)$ :
$G_{l}=0.557, G_{2}=0.837$, and $G_{3}=0.630$ in Table 3.6, where subscripts 1,2 and 3 denote ages 1.2, 1.3, and 2.2. Because of the hind-casting procedure, the estimates associated with the run forecasts of years 1999 (Table 3.4), 2000 (Table 3.5), and 2001 (Table 3.6) are a little different. The difference is negligible: $G_{1}=0.553, G_{2}=0.862, G_{3}=0.616$ for the 1999 forecasts (Table 3.4); $G_{I}=0.560, G_{2}=0.851, G_{3}=0.631$ for the 2000 forecasts (Table 3.5). Their likelihood profiles are to be shown in Chapter 4 (Figures 4.1, 4.2, and 4.3).

The mean and standard deviation of length of age-specific sockeye salmon caught by the Port Moller fishery during the 1999 season was as follows: 505.5 mm and 24.43 mm for age 1.2 fish (sample size: 1,738); 557.5 mm and 30.49 mm for age 1.3 fish (sample size: 835 ); 516.7 mm and 23.28 mm for age 2.2 fish (sample size: 1,021 ); 563.6 mm and 30.43 mm for age 2.3 fish (sample size: 348 ). Figure 3.16 displays the relation between fish length, fish age, and the selectivity of the gillnet fishery, though the statistical measures $\left(R^{2}=0.94 ; \mathrm{p}\right.$-value $\left.=0.03\right)$ are not meaningful because there are only four observations. Ocean age-3 fish (1.3 and 2.3) are remarkably larger than ocean age-2 fish (1.2 and 2.2) (Figure 3.16).

### 3.12. FORECASTS OF RETURNS

Estimates of district-specific run sizes approached the actual run sizes as time progressed during the season (Figures 3.10, 3.11, and 3.12). The approach is not surprising because data are accumulated and updated over time.

An important finding was that the run timing incorporation improved forecasts of run sizes, except for forecasts of the 1999 runs and of the Ugashik and Togiak runs. Despite that Port Moller RTI is a little biased from true run timing (Figure 2.6), forecasts of returns made with the Port Moller RTI incorporation were less biased than those without the incorporation. If we incorporated true run timing, we could further reduce bias in forecasts of runs.

The 1999 Port Moller RTI evaluated at day codes 15 (June 24), 20 (June 29), 25 (July 4), and 30 (July 9) were not different from the average of the past years (1.1, 0.4 , 0.6 , and 1.3 in Table 2.5). That's why the run timing incorporation did not make significant differences in the 1999 run forecasts (Figure 3.10).

The Ugashik and Togiak fish return significantly later by a few days than the other stocks (Figure 1.3). Yearly Port Moller RTI were poorly correlated with yearly RTI of both Ugashik and Togiak stocks (Figure 2.4: $r=0.53$ with Ugashik, and $r=0.36$ with Togiak). Thus, the run timing adjustment on the basis of the Port Moller RTI (Table 2.5) did not improve forecasts of the Ugashik and Togiak runs.

Table 3.1. Results of the K-S test of the five densities fitted to the 1999 Egegik run distribution estimated at day codes 15 (June 24), 20 (June 29), 25 (July 4), 30 (July 9), 35 (July 14), and 40 (July 19), respectively. In each cell, the upper value and the lower value inside parentheses are p -value and K-S test statistic.

| Density | Day 15 | Day 20 | Day 25 | Day 30 | Day 35 | Day 40 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | $\begin{gathered} \text { p-value } \\ (\mathrm{K}-\mathrm{S}) \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { p-value } \\ (\mathrm{K}-\mathrm{S}) \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { p-value } \\ (\mathrm{K}-\mathrm{S}) \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { p-value } \\ (\mathrm{K}-\mathrm{S}) \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { p-value } \\ (\mathrm{K}-\mathrm{S}) \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { p-value } \\ (\mathrm{K}-\mathrm{S}) \end{gathered}$ |
| Location gamma | $\begin{gathered} \hline 0.029 \\ (0.222) \\ \hline \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \hline 0.028 \\ (0.216) \\ \hline \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \hline 0.570 \\ (0.115) \\ \hline \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \hline 0.655 \\ (0.107) \\ \hline \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \hline 0.400 \\ (0.131) \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \hline 0.009 \\ (0.244) \\ \hline \end{gathered}$ |
| Lognormal or Inv. Gaussian | $\begin{gathered} 0.581 \\ (0.118) \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} 0.245 \\ (0.151) \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} 0.462 \\ (0.125) \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} 0.293 \\ (0.144) \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} 0.031 \\ (0.213) \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} 0.001 \\ (0.284) \end{gathered}$ |
| Gamma | $\begin{gathered} \hline 0.022 \\ (0.230) \\ \hline \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \hline 0.014 \\ (0.233) \\ \hline \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \hline 0.244 \\ (0.151) \\ \hline \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \hline 0.187 \\ (0.160) \\ \hline \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \hline 0.023 \\ (0.221) \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \hline 0.000 \\ (0.391) \\ \hline \end{gathered}$ |
| Normal | $\begin{gathered} \hline 0.000 \\ (0.351) \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \hline 0.000 \\ (0.356) \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \hline 0.056 \\ (0.203) \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \hline 0.076 \\ (0.189) \\ \hline \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \hline 0.012 \\ (0.236) \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \hline 0.001 \\ (0.293) \end{gathered}$ |

Table 3.2. Summary of the objective functions. After taking the negative logarithm of the respective objective function, the sum of the negative logarithm functions is the joint objective function.

| Data source | Variable of objective function | Objective function nature |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Port Moller test fishery | Total run size | Normal predictive density <br> function |
|  | Age-specific run sizes | Multinomial likelihood <br> function |
| Historical daily <br> proportions of district run; <br> district fisheries and <br> escapements | District-specific run size | Lognormal predictive density <br> function |
| District fisheries and <br> escapements | District- and age- specific run <br> sizes | Multinomial likelihood <br> function |

Table 3.3. Units of parameter estimates in Tables 3.4 through 3.6 and Figures 4.1 through 4.3. Subscript $t$ represents a date.

\begin{tabular}{|c|c|c|}
\hline Parameter \& Unit \& Description \\
\hline \begin{tabular}{l}
\(\beta_{0, t}\) \\
\(\beta_{1, t}\) \\
\(\sigma_{t}^{2}\)
\end{tabular} \& \begin{tabular}{l}
millions \\
millions/Rogers index \\
millions \({ }^{2}\)
\end{tabular} \& These parameters are from the normal predictive density of the total run (Equation 3.4). \\
\hline \(\mu_{1, t}\)
\(\sigma_{1, t}{ }^{2}\) \& \([\ln\) (thousands) \(]\)
\([\ln \text { (thousands) }]^{2}\) \& These parameters are from the log-normal predictive density of district-specific run (Equation 3.20). Subscript 1 denotes the Kvichak-Naknek stock. \\
\hline \(\mu_{2, t}\)

$\sigma_{2, t}{ }^{2}$ \& | [ln(thousands)] |
| :--- |
| $[\ln \text { (thousands) }]^{2}$ | \& These parameters are from the log-normal predictive density of district-specific run (Equation 3.20). Subscript 2 denotes the Egegik stock. <br>

\hline $\mu_{3, t}$

$\sigma_{3, t}{ }^{2}$ \& $$
\begin{aligned}
& {[\ln \text { (thousands) }]} \\
& {[\ln \text { (thousands) }]^{2}}
\end{aligned}
$$ \& These parameters are from the log-normal predictive density of district-specific run (Equation 3.20). Subscript 3 denotes the Ugashik stock. <br>

\hline $\mu_{4, t}$

$\sigma_{4, t}{ }^{2}$ \& $[\ln$ (thousands) $]$
$[\ln \text { (thousands) }]^{2}$ \& These parameters are from the log-normal predictive density of district-specific run (Equation 3.20). Subscript 4 denotes the Nushagak stock. <br>
\hline $\mu_{5, t}$

$\sigma_{5, t}{ }^{2}$ \& $$
\begin{aligned}
& {[\ln (\text { thousands })]} \\
& {[\ln (\text { thousands })]^{2}}
\end{aligned}
$$ \& These parameters are from the log-normal predictive density of district-specific run (Equation 3.20). Subscript 5 denotes the Togiak stock. <br>

\hline $G_{1}, G_{2}, G_{3}$ \& Fraction whose range is from 0 to 1 \& Port Moller fishery selectivity for age-specific fish. These parameters are from the likelihood function of age-specific proportions (Equation 3.10). Subscripts 1, 2, and 3 denote age 1.2 , age 1.3 , and age 2.2 , respectively. <br>
\hline
\end{tabular}

Table 3.4. Point estimates (MLE) and their standard deviations for the parameters used to forecast the 1999 returns at June 24, June 29, July 4, and July 9, respectively. Subscript $t$ corresponds to the respective forecast date. S.D. denotes standard deviation. The values under the 'With' column are associated with the run timing incorporation while those under the 'Without' column are not. Because the age-specific gillnet selectivity $\left(G_{a}\right)$ is constant by day within the season, I show the values only once. In case of June 29, the estimates under the 'Without' column are the same as those under the 'With' column, because Port Moller RTI detected at June 29, 1999 was not significantly different from the overall RTI in the past years (Table 2.5).

|  |  | With | Without |  |  |
| :---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: |
| Parameter | Date | MLE | S.D. | MLE | S.D. |
| $\beta_{0, t}$ |  | 24.138 | 6.289 | 23.281 | 6.447 |
| $\beta_{1, t}$ |  | 0.026 | 0.010 | 0.024 | 0.009 |
| $\sigma_{t}{ }^{2}$ |  | 108.330 | 0.000 | 106.510 | 0.000 |
| $\mu_{1, t}$ |  | 8.902 | 0.224 | 8.566 | 0.193 |
| $\mu_{2, t}$ |  | 7.008 | 0.171 | 6.781 | 0.174 |
| $\mu_{3, t}$ |  | 8.754 | 0.134 | 8.709 | 0.148 |
| $\mu_{4, t}$ | June | 7.335 | 0.221 | 6.943 | 0.218 |
| $\mu_{5, t}$ | 24 | 4.518 | 0.144 | 4.198 | 0.132 |
| $\sigma_{1, t^{2}}$ |  | 1.998 | 0.203 | 1.566 | 0.342 |
| $\sigma_{2, t}{ }^{2}$ |  | 1.167 | 0.261 | 1.242 | 0.274 |
| $\sigma_{3, t}{ }^{2}$ |  | 0.651 | 0.153 | 0.832 | 0.191 |
| $\sigma_{4, t^{2}}{ }^{2}$ |  | 2.000 | 0.007 | 2.000 | 0.012 |
| $\sigma_{5, t}{ }^{2}$ |  | 0.579 | 0.155 | 0.504 | 0.132 |
| $G_{l}$ |  | 0.553 | 0.540 |  |  |
| $G_{2}$ |  | 0.862 | 0.679 |  |  |
| $G_{3}$ |  | 0.616 | 0.502 |  |  |
| $\beta_{0, t}$ |  | 14.797 | 7.377 |  |  |
| $\beta_{1, t}$ |  | 0.021 | 0.006 |  |  |
| $\sigma_{t}{ }^{2}$ |  | 85.816 | 0.000 |  |  |
| $\mu_{1, t}$ |  | 7.787 | 0.179 |  |  |
| $\mu_{2, t}$ |  | 8.399 | 0.150 |  |  |
| $\mu_{3, t}$ |  | 7.901 | 0.145 |  |  |
| $\mu_{4, t}$ | June | 6.922 | 0.193 |  |  |
| $\mu_{5, t}$ | 29 | 5.378 | 0.195 |  |  |
| $\sigma_{1, t{ }^{2}}$ |  | 1.405 | 0.300 |  |  |
| $\sigma_{2, t}{ }^{2}$ |  | 0.996 | 0.212 |  |  |
| $\sigma_{3, t}{ }^{2}$ |  | 0.887 | 0.194 |  |  |
| $\sigma_{4, t^{2}}{ }^{2}$ |  | 1.640 | 0.350 |  |  |
| $\sigma_{5, t}{ }^{2}$ | 1.181 | 0.300 |  |  |  |

Table 3.4. (continued)

|  |  | With |  |  | Without |  |  |
| :---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | :---: | :---: |
| Parameter | Date | MLE | S.D. | MLE | S.D. |  |  |
| $\beta_{0, t}$ |  | 15.947 | 7.253 | 14.885 | 7.250 |  |  |
| $\beta_{1, t}$ |  | 0.015 | 0.004 | 0.014 | 0.004 |  |  |
| $\sigma_{t}{ }^{2}$ |  | 88.133 | 0.000 | 84.592 | 0.000 |  |  |
| $\mu_{1, t}$ |  | 10.095 | 0.091 | 9.874 | 0.082 |  |  |
| $\mu_{2, t}$ |  | 9.613 | 0.073 | 9.463 | 0.071 |  |  |
| $\mu_{3, t}$ |  | 6.978 | 0.150 | 6.733 | 0.140 |  |  |
| $\mu_{4, t}$ | July | 9.451 | 0.106 | 9.233 | 0.101 |  |  |
| $\mu_{5, t}$ | 4 | 4.799 | 0.126 | 4.571 | 0.108 |  |  |
| $\sigma_{1, t}{ }^{2}$ |  | 0.361 | 0.077 | 0.297 | 0.063 |  |  |
| $\sigma_{2, t}{ }^{2}$ |  | 0.234 | 0.050 | 0.221 | 0.047 |  |  |
| $\sigma_{3, t}{ }^{2}$ |  | 0.944 | 0.206 | 0.822 | 0.179 |  |  |
| $\sigma_{4, t}{ }^{2}$ |  | 0.495 | 0.106 | 0.446 | 0.095 |  |  |
| $\sigma_{5, t}{ }^{2}$ |  | 0.568 | 0.134 | 0.420 | 0.099 |  |  |
| $\beta_{0, t}$ |  | 17.335 | 7.625 | 17.431 | 7.533 |  |  |
| $\beta_{1, t}$ |  | 0.011 | 0.004 | 0.011 | 0.004 |  |  |
| $\sigma_{t}{ }^{2}$ |  | 97.238 | 0.000 | 96.550 | 0.000 |  |  |
| $\mu_{1, t}$ |  | 9.866 | 0.051 | 9.752 | 0.042 |  |  |
| $\mu_{2, t}$ |  | 9.353 | 0.040 | 9.258 | 0.032 |  |  |
| $\mu_{3, t}$ |  | 8.382 | 0.122 | 8.168 | 0.111 |  |  |
| $\mu_{4, t}$ | July | 9.161 | 0.049 | 9.048 | 0.039 |  |  |
| $\mu_{5, t}$ | 9 | 5.582 | 0.085 | 5.430 | 0.071 |  |  |
| $\sigma_{1, t}{ }^{2}$ |  | 0.115 | 0.025 | 0.078 | 0.017 |  |  |
| $\sigma_{2, t}{ }^{2}$ |  | 0.069 | 0.015 | 0.045 | 0.010 |  |  |
| $\sigma_{3, t}{ }^{2}$ |  | 0.621 | 0.135 | 0.532 | 0.115 |  |  |
| $\sigma_{4, t}{ }^{2}$ |  | 0.108 | 0.023 | 0.065 | 0.014 |  |  |
| $\sigma_{5, t}{ }^{2}$ |  |  | 0.276 | 0.063 | 0.191 |  |  | 00.044.

Table 3.5. Point estimates (MLE) and their standard deviations for the parameters used to forecast the 2000 runs at June 24, June 29, July 4, and July 9, respectively. Subscript $t$ corresponds to the respective forecast date. S.D. denotes standard deviation. The values under the 'With' column are associated with the run timing incorporation while those under the 'Without' column are not. Because the age-specific gillnet selectivity $\left(G_{a}\right)$ is constant by day within the season, I show the values only once.

|  | With |  | Without |  |  |
| :---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: |
| Parameter | Date | MLE | S.D. | MLE | S.D. |
| $\beta_{0, t}$ | 21.688 | 6.000 | 23.225 | 6.206 |  |
| $\beta_{1, t}$ | 0.023 | 0.008 | 0.024 | 0.009 |  |
| $\sigma_{t}{ }^{2}$ |  | 90.060 | 0.000 | 99.056 | 0.000 |
| $\mu_{1, t}$ |  | 10.953 | 0.175 | 11.469 | 0.190 |
| $\mu_{2, t}$ |  | 9.926 | 0.168 | 10.188 | 0.179 |
| $\mu_{3, t}$ | June | 8.711 | 0.137 | 8.835 | 0.145 |
| $\mu_{4, t}$ | 7.382 | 0.197 | 8.091 | 0.216 |  |
| $\mu_{5, t}$ | 24 | 6.387 | 0.153 | 6.663 | 0.144 |
| $\sigma_{1, t}{ }^{2}$ |  | 1.341 | 0.286 | 1.559 | 0.336 |
| $\sigma_{2, t}{ }^{2}$ |  | 1.277 | 0.269 | 1.339 | 0.292 |
| $\sigma_{3, t}{ }^{2}$ |  | 0.789 | 0.172 | 0.815 | 0.185 |
| $\sigma_{4, t}{ }^{2}$ |  | 1.716 | 0.366 | 2.000 | 0.008 |
| $\sigma_{5, t}{ }^{2}$ |  | 0.704 | 0.182 | 0.618 | 0.160 |
| $G_{1}$ |  | 0.560 | 0.516 |  |  |
| $G_{2}$ |  | 0.851 | 0.657 |  |  |
| $G_{3}$ |  | 0.631 | 0.501 |  |  |
| $\beta_{0, t}$ |  | 14.722 | 6.690 | 14.802 | 7.135 |
| $\beta_{1, t}$ |  | 0.016 | 0.004 | 0.021 | 0.006 |
| $\sigma_{t}{ }^{2}$ |  | 74.865 | 0.000 | 80.296 | 0.000 |
| $\mu_{1, t}$ |  | 9.485 | 0.101 | 10.605 | 0.180 |
| $\mu_{2, t}$ |  | 9.767 | 0.083 | 10.592 | 0.148 |
| $\mu_{3, t}$ |  | 8.881 | 0.146 | 9.529 | 0.142 |
| $\mu_{4, t}$ | June | 9.535 | 0.121 | 10.714 | 0.194 |
| $\mu_{5, t}$ | 29 | 6.523 | 0.150 | 7.158 | 0.191 |
| $\sigma_{1, t}{ }^{2}$ |  | 0.461 | 0.097 | 1.455 | 0.307 |
| $\sigma_{2, t}{ }^{2}$ |  | 0.309 | 0.065 | 0.986 | 0.208 |
| $\sigma_{3, t}{ }^{2}$ |  | 0.656 | 0.138 | 1.702 | 0.359 |
| $\sigma_{4, t}{ }^{2}$ |  | 0.810 | 0.191 | 1.166 | 0.291 |
| $\sigma_{5, t}{ }^{2}$ |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |

Table 3.5. (continued)

|  |  | With |  | Without |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | :---: |
| Parameter | Date | MLE | S.D. | MLE | S.D. |  |
| $\beta_{0, t}$ |  | 17.022 | 7.308 | 14.943 | 7.026 |  |
| $\beta_{1, t}$ |  | 0.011 | 0.004 | 0.014 | 0.004 |  |
| $\sigma_{t}{ }^{2}$ |  | 89.146 | 0.000 | 79.477 | 0.000 |  |
| $\mu_{1, t}$ |  | 9.155 | 0.054 | 9.669 | 0.080 |  |
| $\mu_{2, t}$ |  | 9.329 | 0.046 | 9.724 | 0.070 |  |
| $\mu_{3, t}$ |  | 8.676 | 0.122 | 9.344 | 0.141 |  |
| $\mu_{4, t}$ | July | 9.240 | 0.070 | 9.762 | 0.099 |  |
| $\mu_{5, t}$ | 4 | 6.358 | 0.071 | 6.918 | 0.114 |  |
| $\sigma_{1, t}{ }^{2}$ |  | 0.133 | 0.028 | 0.291 | 0.061 |  |
| $\sigma_{2, t^{2}}{ }^{2}$ |  | 0.096 | 0.020 | 0.218 | 0.046 |  |
| $\sigma_{3, t}{ }^{2}$ |  | 0.641 | 0.138 | 0.857 | 0.185 |  |
| $\sigma_{4, t^{2}}{ }^{2}$ |  | 0.221 | 0.047 | 0.437 | 0.092 |  |
| $\sigma_{5, t}{ }^{2}$ |  | 0.192 | 0.044 | 0.480 | 0.112 |  |
| $\beta_{0, t}$ |  | 17.673 | 7.291 | 17.728 | 7.314 |  |
| $\beta_{1, t}$ |  | 0.010 | 0.003 | 0.010 | 0.003 |  |
| $\sigma_{t}{ }^{2}$ |  | 91.092 | 0.000 | 91.521 | 0.000 |  |
| $\mu_{1, t}$ |  | 8.779 | 0.019 | 9.055 | 0.041 |  |
| $\mu_{2, t}$ |  | 8.989 | 0.014 | 9.236 | 0.032 |  |
| $\mu_{3, t}$ |  | 7.951 | 0.083 | 8.561 | 0.109 |  |
| $\mu_{4, t}$ | July | 8.984 | 0.015 | 9.263 | 0.038 |  |
| $\mu_{5, t}$ | 9 | 6.428 | 0.050 | 6.896 | 0.072 |  |
| $\sigma_{1, t}{ }^{2}$ |  | 0.016 | 0.003 | 0.076 | 0.016 |  |
| $\sigma_{2, t}{ }^{2}$ |  | 0.009 | 0.002 | 0.045 | 0.009 |  |
| $\sigma_{3, t}{ }^{2}$ |  | 0.309 | 0.065 | 0.520 | 0.111 |  |
| $\sigma_{4, t^{2}}$ |  | 0.010 | 0.002 | 0.064 | 0.013 |  |
| $\sigma_{5, t}{ }^{2}$ |  | 0.098 | 0.022 | 0.202 | 0.046 |  |

Table 3.6. Point estimates (MLE) and their standard deviations for the parameters used to forecast the 2001 runs at June 24, June 29, July 4, and July 9, respectively. Subscript $t$ corresponds to the respective forecast date. S.D. denotes standard deviation. The values under the 'With' column are associated with the run timing incorporation while those under the 'Without' column are not. Because the age-specific gillnet selectivity $\left(G_{a}\right)$ is constant by day within the season, I show the values only once.

|  |  | With |  | Without |  |
| :---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: |
| Parameter | Date | MLE | S.D. | MLE | S.D. |
| $\beta_{0, t}$ | 21.033 | 5.523 | 22.411 | 5.758 |  |
| $\beta_{1, t}$ |  | 0.024 | 0.007 | 0.025 | 0.008 |
| $\sigma_{t}{ }^{2}$ |  | 84.774 | 0.000 | 93.713 | 0.000 |
| $\mu_{1, t}$ |  | 11.531 | 0.179 | 12.045 | 0.194 |
| $\mu_{2, t}$ |  | 10.253 | 0.169 | 10.525 | 0.176 |
| $\mu_{3, t}$ |  | 8.914 | 0.136 | 9.033 | 0.144 |
| $\mu_{4, t}$ | June | 10.660 | 0.195 | 11.363 | 0.213 |
| $\mu_{5, t}$ | 24 | 5.108 | 0.150 | 5.375 | 0.139 |
| $\sigma_{1, t}{ }^{2}$ |  | 1.445 | 0.305 | 1.662 | 0.354 |
| $\sigma_{2, t}{ }^{2}$ |  | 1.314 | 0.274 | 1.339 | 0.289 |
| $\sigma_{3, t}{ }^{2}$ |  | 0.795 | 0.172 | 0.829 | 0.185 |
| $\sigma_{4, t}{ }^{2}$ |  | 1.712 | 0.361 | 2.000 | 0.009 |
| $\sigma_{5, t}{ }^{2}$ |  | 0.693 | 0.176 | 0.602 | 0.153 |
| $G_{I}$ |  | 0.557 | 0.498 |  |  |
| $G_{2}$ |  | 0.837 | 0.625 |  |  |
| $G_{3}$ |  | 0.630 | 0.492 |  |  |
| $\beta_{0, t}$ |  | 15.796 | 5.940 | 15.826 | 6.182 |
| $\beta_{1, t}$ |  | 0.017 | 0.004 | 0.020 | 0.005 |
| $\sigma_{t}{ }^{2}$ | 72.216 | 0.000 | 75.490 | 0.000 |  |
| $\mu_{1, t}$ |  | 10.096 | 0.146 | 10.811 | 0.179 |
| $\mu_{2, t}$ |  | 9.210 | 0.127 | 9.746 | 0.149 |
| $\mu_{3, t}$ |  | 7.924 | 0.138 | 8.370 | 0.145 |
| $\mu_{4, t}$ | June | 9.969 | 0.144 | 10.707 | 0.194 |
| $\mu_{5, t}$ | 29 | 6.111 | 0.159 | 6.570 | 0.185 |
| $\sigma_{1, t}{ }^{2}$ |  | 0.981 | 0.205 | 1.480 | 0.309 |
| $\sigma_{2, t}{ }^{2}$ |  | 0.740 | 0.154 | 1.018 | 0.212 |
| $\sigma_{3, t}{ }^{2}$ |  | 0.837 | 0.178 | 0.928 | 0.198 |
| $\sigma_{4, t}{ }^{2}$ |  | 0.887 | 0.198 | 1.723 | 0.359 |
| $\sigma_{5, t}{ }^{2}$ |  | 0.210 | 1.131 | 0.278 |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |

Table 3.6. (continued)

|  |  | With |  | Without |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | :---: |
| Parameter | Date | MLE | S.D. | MLE | S.D. |  |
| $\beta_{0, t}$ |  | 17.832 | 6.410 | 16.352 | 6.028 |  |
| $\beta_{1, t}$ |  | 0.011 | 0.003 | 0.013 | 0.004 |  |
| $\sigma_{t}{ }^{2}$ |  | 84.958 | 0.000 | 75.141 | 0.000 |  |
| $\mu_{1, t}$ |  | 9.443 | 0.059 | 9.799 | 0.080 |  |
| $\mu_{2, t}$ |  | 8.641 | 0.056 | 8.888 | 0.070 |  |
| $\mu_{3, t}$ |  | 6.948 | 0.126 | 7.404 | 0.143 |  |
| $\mu_{4, t}$ | July | 9.359 | 0.087 | 9.711 | 0.098 |  |
| $\mu_{5, t}$ | 4 | 6.468 | 0.081 | 6.843 | 0.111 |  |
| $\sigma_{1, t}{ }^{2}$ |  | 0.161 | 0.034 | 0.295 | 0.062 |  |
| $\sigma_{2, t^{2}}{ }^{2}$ |  | 0.146 | 0.030 | 0.225 | 0.047 |  |
| $\sigma_{3, t^{2}}$ |  | 0.702 | 0.150 | 0.900 | 0.192 |  |
| $\sigma_{4, t^{2}}$ |  | 0.352 | 0.073 | 0.438 | 0.091 |  |
| $\sigma_{5, t}{ }^{2}$ |  | 0.258 | 0.058 | 0.468 | 0.107 |  |
| $\beta_{0, t}$ |  | 18.661 | 6.225 | 18.703 | 6.243 |  |
| $\beta_{1, t}$ |  | 0.010 | 0.003 | 0.010 | 0.003 |  |
| $\sigma_{t}{ }^{2}$ |  | 85.519 | 0.000 | 85.904 | 0.000 |  |
| $\mu_{1, t}$ |  | 9.147 | 0.023 | 9.375 | 0.040 |  |
| $\mu_{2, t}$ |  | 8.365 | 0.017 | 8.567 | 0.031 |  |
| $\mu_{3, t}$ |  | 7.015 | 0.074 | 7.518 | 0.108 |  |
| $\mu_{4, t}$ | July | 9.034 | 0.017 | 9.263 | 0.037 |  |
| $\mu_{5, t}$ | 9 | 6.590 | 0.054 | 6.959 | 0.070 |  |
| $\sigma_{1, t^{2}}$ |  | 0.024 | 0.005 | 0.074 | 0.016 |  |
| $\sigma_{2, t}{ }^{2}$ |  | 0.013 | 0.003 | 0.045 | 0.009 |  |
| $\sigma_{3, t}{ }^{2}$ |  | 0.245 | 0.052 | 0.526 | 0.111 |  |
| $\sigma_{4, t^{2}}$ |  | 0.014 | 0.003 | 0.063 | 0.013 |  |
| $\sigma_{5, t}{ }^{2}$ |  | 0.115 | 0.026 | 0.197 | 0.044 |  |

Table 3.7. The 1999 run forecasts (thousands) with the run timing information incorporated.

| Date to which <br> cumulative data <br> are available | District | Age 1.2 | Age 1.3 | Age 2.2 | Age 2.3 | Sum |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | ---: | ---: |
|  | K-N | 217 | 215 | 218 | 209 | 858 |
|  | Egegik | 73 | 18 | 190 | 66 | 348 |
| June 24 (15) | Ugashik | 16,107 | 3,773 | 8,254 | 997 | 29,132 |
|  | Nushagak | 19 | 173 | 1 | 10 | 203 |
|  | Togiak | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 51 |
|  | K-N | 16,304 | 3,899 | 6,378 | 860 | 27,442 |
|  | Egegik | 771 | 333 | 1,656 | 494 | 3,255 |
|  | Ugashik | 659 | 205 | 295 | 92 | 1,251 |
| June 29 (20) | Uushagak | 15 | 208 | 1 | 8 | 231 |
|  | Togiak | 17 | 17 | 17 | 17 | 67 |
|  | K-N | 13,038 | 2,672 | 6,280 | 1,334 | 23,324 |
|  | Egegik | 4,576 | 1,147 | 5,133 | 1,000 | 11,855 |
|  | July 4 (25) | Ugashik | 224 | 68 | 97 | 31 |
|  | Nushagak | 3,103 | 3,302 | 326 | 229 | 6,959 |
|  | Togiak | 24 | 53 | 1 | 1 | 80 |
|  | K-N | 10,512 | 2,032 | 5,253 | 1,263 | 19,060 |
|  | Egegik | 3,904 | 1,043 | 4,973 | 1,020 | 10,940 |
|  | July 9 (30) | Ugashik | 1,687 | 302 | 478 | 126 |
|  | Nushagak | 4,328 | 3,463 | 590 | 235 | 8,593 |
|  | Togiak | 71 | 124 | 4 | 2 | 201 |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

Table 3.8. The 1999 run forecasts (thousands) with the run timing information not incorporated.

| Date to which cumulative data are available | District | Age 1.2 | Age 1.3 | Age 2.2 | Age 2.3 | Sum |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| June 24 (15) | K-N | 239 | 236 | 240 | 229 | 944 |
|  | Egegik | 54 | 13 | 139 | 49 | 255 |
|  | Ugashik | 16,056 | 3,786 | 8,252 | 995 | 29,089 |
|  | Nushagak | 14 | 126 | 1 | 7 | 148 |
|  | Togiak | 10 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 40 |
| June 29 (20) | K-N | 16,304 | 3,899 | 6,378 | 860 | 27,442 |
|  | Egegik | 771 | 333 | 1,656 | 494 | 3,255 |
|  | Ugashik | 659 | 205 | 295 | 92 | 1,251 |
|  | Nushagak | 15 | 208 | 1 | 8 | 231 |
|  | Togiak | 17 | 17 | 17 | 17 | 67 |
| July 4 (25) | K-N | 11,876 | 2,440 | 5,713 | 1,214 | 21,242 |
|  | Egegik | 4,180 | 1,048 | 4,684 | 912 | 10,824 |
|  | Ugashik | 199 | 61 | 86 | 28 | 374 |
|  | Nushagak | 2,804 | 2,989 | 294 | 207 | 6,294 |
|  | Togiak | 22 | 48 | 1 | 1 | 72 |
| July 9 (30) | K-N | 9,788 | 1,885 | 4,887 | 1,176 | 17,736 |
|  | Egegik | 3,667 | 976 | 4,666 | 956 | 10,265 |
|  | Ugashik | 1,514 | 271 | 429 | 113 | 2,328 |
|  | Nushagak | 4,085 | 3,258 | 557 | 222 | 8,122 |
|  | Togiak | 67 | 116 | 3 | 2 | 188 |

Table 3.9. The 2000 run forecasts (thousands) with the run timing information incorporated.

| Date to which <br> cumulative data <br> are available | District | Age 1.2 | Age 1.3 | Age 2.2 | Age 2.3 | Sum |
| :---: | :---: | ---: | :---: | ---: | ---: | ---: |
|  | K-N | 2,564 | 11,741 | 433 | 276 | 15,014 |
|  | Egegik | 1,470 | 3,368 | 2,386 | 3,344 | 10,569 |
| June 24 (15) | Ugashik | 611 | 1,820 | 216 | 184 | 2,831 |
|  | Nushagak | 53 | 231 | 2 | 2 | 288 |
|  | Togiak | 8 | 290 | 4 | 1 | 302 |
|  | K-N | 1,060 | 5,672 | 250 | 331 | 7,312 |
|  | Egegik | 825 | 3,546 | 2,140 | 2,750 | 9,261 |
|  | Ugashik | 580 | 1,717 | 202 | 165 | 2,663 |
| June 29 (20) | Nushagak | 2,425 | 4,460 | 25 | 33 | 6,944 |
|  | Togiak | 8 | 297 | 4 | 1 | 310 |
|  | K-N | 1,151 | 5,439 | 891 | 432 | 7,914 |
|  | Egegik | 910 | 3,442 | 1,892 | 2,801 | 9,045 |
|  | July 4 (25) | Ugashik | 452 | 2,168 | 190 | 120 |
|  | Nushagak | 3,173 | 5,179 | 41 | 41 | 8,431 |
|  | Togiak | 12 | 458 | 6 | 1 | 477 |
|  | K-N | 910 | 4,378 | 565 | 542 | 6,395 |
|  | Egegik | 792 | 2,928 | 1,807 | 2,361 | 7,886 |
|  | July 9 (30) | Ugashik | 287 | 1,632 | 121 | 78 |
|  | Nushagak | 3,189 | 4,654 | 58 | 38 | 7,939 |
|  | Togiak | 14 | 540 | 7 | 1 | 563 |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

Table 3.10. The 2000 run forecasts (thousands) with the run timing information not incorporated.

| Date to which <br> cumulative data <br> are available | District | Age 1.2 | Age 1.3 | Age 2.2 | Age 2.3 | Sum |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | ---: | ---: | ---: |
|  | K-N | 2,765 | 12,630 | 465 | 296 | 16,156 |
|  | Egegik | 1,611 | 3,683 | 2,610 | 3,656 | 11,560 |
| June 24 (15) | Ugashik | 659 | 1,965 | 233 | 198 | 3,056 |
|  | Nushagak | 81 | 351 | 3 | 3 | 437 |
|  | Togiak | 11 | 409 | 5 | 1 | 426 |
|  | K-N | 955 | 5,160 | 233 | 316 | 6,664 |
|  | Egegik | 741 | 3,231 | 2,015 | 2,670 | 8,657 |
|  | Ugashik | 1,113 | 3,278 | 395 | 313 | 5,100 |
| June 29 (20) | Nushagak | 2,346 | 4,349 | 25 | 34 | 6,754 |
|  | Togiak | 10 | 388 | 5 | 1 | 404 |
|  | K-N | 1,326 | 6,189 | 1,027 | 506 | 9,048 |
|  | Egegik | 944 | 3,535 | 1,993 | 2,999 | 9,472 |
|  | Uuly 4 (25) | Ugashik | 568 | 2,705 | 238 | 152 |
|  | Nushagak | 3,433 | 5,543 | 45 | 45 | 9,062 |
|  | Togiak | 16 | 588 | 8 | 1 | 612 |
|  | K-N | 1,086 | 5,216 | 687 | 662 | 7,651 |
|  | Egegik | 919 | 3,397 | 2,149 | 2,830 | 9,295 |
|  | 392 | 2,222 | 165 | 106 | 2,885 |  |
| July 9 (30) | Ugashik | Nushagak | 3,945 | 5,734 | 73 | 48 |
|  | Togiak | 20 | 770 | 10 | 1 | 9,800 |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

Table 3.11. The 2001 run forecasts (thousands) with the run timing information incorporated.

| Date to which <br> cumulative data <br> are available | District | Age 1.2 | Age 1.3 | Age 2.2 | Age 2.3 | Sum |
| :---: | :---: | ---: | :---: | ---: | ---: | ---: |
|  | K-N | 720 | 27,569 | 1,361 | 2,312 | 31,962 |
|  | Egegik | 32 | 5,067 | 835 | 2,507 | 8,440 |
| June 24 (15) | Ugashik | 55 | 2,920 | 246 | 285 | 3,506 |
|  | Nushagak | 10 | 6,104 | 1 | 72 | 6,186 |
|  | Togiak | 3 | 90 | 1 | 1 | 95 |
|  | K-N | 814 | 24,052 | 1,301 | 1,615 | 27,782 |
|  | Egegik | 59 | 3,578 | 676 | 2,228 | 6,540 |
|  | Ugashik | 65 | 1,051 | 68 | 88 | 1,271 |
| June 29 (20) | Nushagak | 78 | 8,302 | 6 | 85 | 8,471 |
|  | Togiak | 4 | 196 | 1 | 2 | 203 |
|  | K-N | 539 | 12,552 | 511 | 690 | 14,292 |
|  | Egegik | 59 | 2,877 | 904 | 2,096 | 5,936 |
|  | July 4 (25) | Ugashik | 28 | 453 | 29 | 38 |
|  | Nushagak | 365 | 10,783 | 7 | 81 | 11,237 |
|  | Togiak | 7 | 487 | 1 | 7 | 502 |
|  | K-N | 290 | 8,590 | 269 | 433 | 9,583 |
|  | Egegik | 42 | 1,961 | 739 | 1,583 | 4,325 |
|  | Uuly 9 (30) | Ugashik | 139 | 687 | 33 | 69 |
|  | Nushagak | 399 | 7,957 | 11 | 68 | 8,436 |
|  | Togiak | 10 | 636 | 1 | 10 | 656 |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

Table 3.12. The 2001 run forecasts (thousands) with the run timing information not incorporated.

| Date to which cumulative data are available | District | Age 1.2 | Age 1.3 | Age 2.2 | Age 2.3 | Sum |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| June 24 (15) | K-N | 737 | 27,440 | 1,279 | 2,250 | 31,706 |
|  | Egegik | 40 | 5,958 | 1,022 | 2,911 | 9,931 |
|  | Ugashik | 59 | 3,135 | 266 | 305 | 3,765 |
|  | Nushagak | 13 | 7,732 | 1 | 90 | 7,836 |
|  | Togiak | 4 | 123 | 1 | 1 | 129 |
| June 29 (20) | K-N | 955 | 29,151 | 1,473 | 1,826 | 33,405 |
|  | Egegik | 71 | 4,346 | 817 | 2,660 | 7,894 |
|  | Ugashik | 93 | 1,498 | 97 | 125 | 1,813 |
|  | Nushagak | 63 | 7,276 | 4 | 74 | 7,417 |
|  | Togiak | 5 | 241 | 1 | 3 | 250 |
| July 4 (25) | K-N | 822 | 17,348 | 760 | 952 | 19,882 |
|  | Egegik | 69 | 3,482 | 1,049 | 2,534 | 7,134 |
|  | Ugashik | 36 | 583 | 37 | 49 | 705 |
|  | Nushagak | 332 | 11,836 | 6 | 89 | 12,263 |
|  | Togiak | 9 | 572 | 1 | 9 | 590 |
| July 9 (30) | K-N | 370 | 10,964 | 358 | 562 | 12,254 |
|  | Egegik | 52 | 2,421 | 910 | 1,969 | 5,352 |
|  | Ugashik | 184 | 910 | 44 | 91 | 1,229 |
|  | Nushagak | 499 | 10,003 | 14 | 87 | 10,603 |
|  | Togiak | 13 | 850 | 1 | 13 | 878 |

Table 3.13. Comparison of the effect of incorporating the run timing forecast on the 1999 run forecasts and that of ignoring the run timing forecast. 'With' and 'Without' denote 'with incorporation of the run timing forecast' and 'without it.' Units of the forecast and error values are 'numbers in thousands' and '\%.' The minus (-) sign indicates an under-forecast.

| Date to which cumulative data are available | District | With |  | Without |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | Forecast | Error | Forecast | Error |
| June 24 (15) | K-N | 858 | -94.9 | 944 | -94.4 |
|  | Egegik | 348 | -96.2 | 255 | -97.2 |
|  | Ugashik | 29,132 | 643.3 | 29,089 | 642.3 |
|  | Nushagak | 203 | -97.6 | 148 | -98.3 |
|  | Togiak | 51 | -89.8 | 40 | -92.0 |
| June 29 (20) | K-N | 27,442 | 63.7 | 27,442 | 63.7 |
|  | Egegik | 3,255 | -64.4 | 3,255 | -64.4 |
|  | Ugashik | 1,251 | -68.1 | 1,251 | -68.1 |
|  | Nushagak | 231 | -97.3 | 231 | -97.3 |
|  | Togiak | 67 | -86.7 | 67 | -86.7 |
| July 4 (25) | K-N | 23,324 | 39.1 | 21,242 | 26.7 |
|  | Egegik | 11,855 | 29.6 | 10,824 | 18.3 |
|  | Ugashik | 421 | -89.3 | 374 | -90.5 |
|  | Nushagak | 6,959 | -18.0 | 6,294 | -25.8 |
|  | Togiak | 80 | -84.2 | 72 | -85.6 |
| July 9 (30) | K-N | 19,060 | 13.7 | 17,736 | 5.8 |
|  | Egegik | 10,940 | 19.6 | 10,265 | 12.2 |
|  | Ugashik | 2,593 | -33.8 | 2,328 | -40.6 |
|  | Nushagak | 8,616 | 1.6 | 8,122 | -4.3 |
|  | Togiak | 201 | -60.1 | 188 | -62.6 |

Table 3.14. Comparison of the effect of incorporating the run timing forecast on the 2000 run forecasts and that of ignoring the run timing forecast. 'With' and 'Without' denote 'with incorporation of the run timing forecast' and 'without it.' Units of the forecast and error values are 'numbers in thousands' and '\%.' The minus (-) sign indicates an under-forecast.

| Date to which <br> cumulative data <br> are available | District | With |  | Forecast | Error |
| :---: | :---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: |
|  | K-N | Forecast | Error |  |  |
|  | Egegik | 15,014 | 90.6 | 16,156 | 105.1 |
| June 24 (15) | Ugashik | 2,569 | 29.9 | 11,560 | 42.1 |
|  | Nushagak | 288 | -96.0 | 3,056 | 43.6 |
|  | Togiak | 302 | -72.7 | 437 | -94.9 |
|  | K-N | 7,312 | -7.2 | 6,664 | -61.5 |
|  | Egegik | 9,261 | 13.8 | 8,657 | -15.4 |
|  | June 29 (20) | Ugashik | 2,663 | 25.2 | 5,100 |
|  | Nushagak | 6,944 | -18.7 | 6,754 | -21.0 |
|  | Togiak | 310 | -72.0 | 404 | -63.4 |
|  | K-N | 7,914 | 0.5 | 9,048 | 14.9 |
|  | Egegik | 9,045 | 11.2 | 9,472 | 16.4 |
|  | July 4 (25) | Ugashik | 2,931 | 37.7 | 3,662 |
|  | Nushagak | 8,434 | -1.3 | 9,066 | 6.1 |
|  | Togiak | 477 | -56.9 | 612 | -44.6 |
|  | K-N | 6,395 | -18.8 | 7,651 | -2.9 |
|  | Egegik | 7,886 | -3.1 | 9,295 | 14.2 |
|  | July 9 (30) | Ugashik | 2,117 | -0.5 | 2,885 |
|  | Nushagak | 7,939 | -7.1 | 9,800 | 14.7 |
|  | Togiak | 563 | -49.1 | 801 | -27.5 |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |

Table 3.15. Comparison of the effect of incorporating the run timing forecast on the 2001 run forecasts and that of ignoring the run timing forecast. 'With' and 'Without' denote 'with incorporation of the run timing forecast' and 'without it.' Units of the forecast and error values are 'numbers in thousands' and '\%.' The minus (-) sign indicates an under-forecast.

| Date to which <br> cumulative data <br> are available | District | With |  | Forecast | Error |
| :---: | :---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: |
|  | K-N | Forecast | Error |  |  |
|  | Egegik | 31,962 | 291.2 | 31,706 | 288.1 |
| June 24 (15) | Ugashik | 3,440 | 120.3 | 9,931 | 159.2 |
|  | Nushagak | 6,186 | 167.8 | 3,765 | 187.6 |
|  | Togiak | 95 | -91.2 | 7,836 | 4.9 |
|  | K-N | 27,782 | 240.0 | 33,405 | -88.4 |
|  | Egegik | 6,540 | 70.7 | 7,894 | 106.9 |
|  | June 29 (20) | Ugashik | 1,271 | -2.9 | 1,813 |
|  | Nushagak | 8,471 | 13.4 | 7,417 | -0.8 |
|  | Togiak | 203 | -81.7 | 250 | -77.5 |
|  | K-N | 14,292 | 74.9 | 19,882 | 143.4 |
|  | Egegik | 5,936 | 54.9 | 7,134 | 86.2 |
| July 4 (25) | Ugashik | 548 | -58.2 | 705 | -46.2 |
|  | Nushagak | 11,237 | 50.4 | 12,263 | 64.1 |
|  | Togiak | 502 | -54.7 | 590 | -46.7 |
|  | K-N | 9,583 | 17.3 | 12,254 | 50.0 |
|  | Egegik | 4,325 | 12.9 | 5,352 | 39.7 |
|  | 928 | -29.1 | 1,229 | -6.2 |  |
| July 9 (30) | Ugashik | 928 |  |  |  |
|  | Nushagak | 8,436 | 12.9 | 10,603 | 41.9 |
|  | Togiak | 656 | -40.8 | 878 | -20.8 |

Table 3.16. Evaluation of the incorporation of the Port Moller gear selectivity for agespecific fish in forecasting the 1999 returns. The forecast (thousands) and error (\%) values under the 'Without' column represent those calculated with the selectivity ignored. The values under the 'With' column are the same as those under the 'With' column in Table 3.13. In both cases, I incorporated the run time forecast information accordingly. The minus (-) sign indicates an under-forecast.

| Date to which <br> cumulative data <br> are available | District | With |  | Without |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | :---: |
|  | Forecast | Error | Forecast | Error |  |  |
|  | K-N | 858 | -94.9 | 1,177 | -93.0 |  |
| June 24 (15) | Egegik | 348 | -96.2 | 362 | -96.0 |  |
|  | Ugashik | 29,132 | 643.3 | 27,770 | 608.6 |  |
|  | Nushagak | 203 | -97.6 | 219 | -97.4 |  |
|  | Togiak | 51 | -89.8 | 51 | -89.8 |  |
|  | K-N | 27,442 | 63.7 | 647 | -96.1 |  |
|  | Egegik | 3,255 | -64.4 | 2,299 | -74.9 |  |
| June 29 (20) | Ugashik | 1,251 | -68.1 | 27,092 | 591.3 |  |
|  | Nushagak | 231 | -97.3 | 235 | -97.2 |  |
|  | Togiak | 67 | -86.7 | 67 | -86.7 |  |
|  | K-N | 23,324 | 39.1 | 20,216 | 20.6 |  |
|  | Egegik | 11,855 | 29.6 | 12,228 | 33.6 |  |
| July 4 (25) | Ugashik | 421 | -89.3 | 422 | -89.2 |  |
|  | Nushagak | 6,959 | -18.0 | 9,075 | 7.0 |  |
|  | Togiak | 80 | -84.2 | 80 | -84.1 |  |
|  | K-N | 19,060 | 13.7 | 18,241 | 8.8 |  |
|  | Egegik | 10,940 | 19.6 | 10,982 | 20.0 |  |
|  | July 9 (30) | Ugashik | 2,593 | -33.8 | 2,418 |  |
|  | Nushagak | 8,616 | 1.6 | 9,162 | -38.3 |  |
|  | Togiak | 201 | -60.1 | 203 | -59.8 |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

Table 3.17. Evaluation of the incorporation of the Port Moller gear selectivity for agespecific fish in forecasting the 2000 returns. The forecast (thousands) and error (\%) values under the 'Without' column represent those calculated with the selectivity ignored. The values under the 'With' column are the same as those under the 'With' column in Table 3.14. In both cases, I incorporated the run time forecast information accordingly. The minus (-) sign indicates an under-forecast.

| Date to which <br> cumulative data <br> are available | District | With |  | Forecast | Error |
| :---: | :---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: |
|  | K-N | Forecast | Error |  |  |
|  | Egegik | 15,014 | 90.6 | 15,169 | 92.6 |
| June 24 (15) | Ugashik | 2,569 | 29.9 | 10,930 | 34.3 |
|  | Nushagak | 288 | -93.0 | 2,569 | 20.7 |
|  | Togiak | 302 | -72.7 | 285 | -96.7 |
|  | K-N | 7,312 | -7.2 | 8,303 | -72.4 |
|  | Egegik | 9,261 | 13.8 | 9,755 | 5.4 |
|  | June 29 (20) | Ugashik | 2,663 | 25.2 | 2,507 |
|  | Nushagak | 6,944 | -18.7 | 5,488 | -35.8 |
|  | Togiak | 310 | -72.0 | 317 | -71.3 |
|  | K-N | 7,914 | 0.5 | 8,045 | 2.1 |
|  | Egegik | 9,045 | 11.2 | 9,425 | 15.8 |
| July 4 (25) | Ugashik | 2,931 | 37.7 | 3,029 | 42.3 |
|  | Nushagak | 8,434 | -1.3 | 7,500 | -12.2 |
|  | Togiak | 477 | -56.9 | 482 | -56.4 |
|  | K-N | 6,395 | -18.8 | 6,417 | -18.6 |
|  | Egegik | 7,886 | -3.1 | 7,929 | -2.6 |
|  | July 9 (30) | Ugashik | 2,117 | -0.5 | 2,152 |
|  | Nushagak | 7,939 | -7.1 | 7,866 | -8.1 |
|  | Togiak | 563 | -49.1 | 566 | -48.8 |

Table 3.18. Evaluation of the incorporation of the Port Moller gear selectivity for agespecific fish in forecasting the 2001 returns. The forecast (thousands) and error (\%) values under the 'Without' column represent those calculated with the selectivity ignored. The values under the 'With' column are the same as those under the 'With' column in Table 3.15. In both cases, I incorporated the run time forecast information accordingly. The minus (-) sign indicates an under-forecast.

| Date to which cumulative data are available | District | With |  | Without |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | Forecast | Error | Forecast | Error |
| June 24 (15) | K-N | 31,962 | 291.2 | 28,561 | 249.6 |
|  | Egegik | 8,440 | 120.3 | 10,940 | 185.6 |
|  | Ugashik | 3,506 | 167.8 | 3,561 | 172.0 |
|  | Nushagak | 6,186 | -17.2 | 6,712 | -10.2 |
|  | Togiak | 95 | -91.4 | 95 | -91.4 |
| June 29 (20) | K-N | 27,782 | 240.0 | 23,932 | 192.9 |
|  | Egegik | 6,540 | 70.7 | 8,466 | 121.0 |
|  | Ugashik | 1,271 | -2.9 | 1,290 | -1.5 |
|  | Nushagak | 8,471 | 13.4 | 9,732 | 30.2 |
|  | Togiak | 203 | -81.7 | 203 | -81.7 |
| July 4 (25) | K-N | 14,292 | 74.9 | 13,730 | 68.1 |
|  | Egegik | 5,936 | 54.9 | 6,237 | 62.8 |
|  | Ugashik | 548 | -58.2 | 548 | -58.1 |
|  | Nushagak | 11,237 | 50.4 | 11,177 | 49.6 |
|  | Togiak | 502 | -54.7 | 503 | -54.6 |
| July 9 (30) | K-N | 9,583 | 17.3 | 9,562 | 17.0 |
|  | Egegik | 4,325 | 12.9 | 4,343 | 13.4 |
|  | Ugashik | 928 | -29.1 | 914 | -30.2 |
|  | Nushagak | 8,436 | 12.9 | 8,416 | 12.6 |
|  | Togiak | 656 | -40.8 | 656 | -40.8 |

Table 3.19. Age-specific proportions in data observed up to day code 25 (July 4) of year 1999, and those in the 1999 run forecasts made at the day. The first category is the observed data available up to the day, the second category is the run forecasts made with the Port Moller selectivity for age-specific fish considered, and the third one is the run forecasts with the selectivity ignored. These values are used to draw Figure 3.13.

| Category | Area | Age 1.2 | Age 1.3 | Age 2.2 | Age 2.3 |
| :--- | :--- | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: |
|  | Port Moller | 0.45 | 0.21 | 0.26 | 0.08 |
|  | K-N | 0.48 | 0.14 | 0.29 | 0.09 |
| Observed data | Egegik | 0.35 | 0.11 | 0.44 | 0.11 |
|  | Ugashik | 0.53 | 0.16 | 0.23 | 0.07 |
|  | Nushagak | 0.42 | 0.50 | 0.05 | 0.04 |
|  | Togiak | 0.31 | 0.68 | 0.01 | 0.01 |
|  | Total | 0.42 | 0.23 | 0.26 | 0.09 |
| The run forecasts | K-N | 0.56 | 0.12 | 0.27 | 0.06 |
| made with the | Egegik | 0.39 | 0.10 | 0.43 | 0.08 |
| selectivity being | Ugashik | 0.53 | 0.16 | 0.23 | 0.07 |
| considered | Nushagak | 0.45 | 0.47 | 0.05 | 0.03 |
|  | Togiak | 0.31 | 0.67 | 0.01 | 0.01 |
|  | Total | 0.44 | 0.21 | 0.27 | 0.08 |
| The run forecasts | K-N | 0.50 | 0.14 | 0.27 | 0.09 |
| made with the | Egegik | 0.36 | 0.11 | 0.43 | 0.11 |
| selectivity being | Ugashik | 0.53 | 0.16 | 0.23 | 0.07 |
| ignored | Nushagak | 0.42 | 0.50 | 0.05 | 0.04 |
|  | Togiak | 0.31 | 0.67 | 0.01 | 0.01 |

Table 3.20. Age-specific proportions in data observed up to day code 25 (July 4) of year 2000, and those in the 2000 run forecasts made at the day. The first category is the observed data available up to the day, the second category is the run forecasts made with the Port Moller selectivity for age-specific fish considered, and the third one is the run forecasts with the selectivity ignored. These values are used to draw Figure 3.14.

| Category | Area | Age 1.2 | Age 1.3 | Age 2.2 | Age 2.3 |
| :--- | :--- | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: |
|  | Port Moller | 0.15 | 0.63 | 0.08 | 0.14 |
|  | K-N | 0.14 | 0.68 | 0.12 | 0.06 |
| Observed | Egegik | 0.09 | 0.36 | 0.22 | 0.33 |
|  | Ugashik | 0.15 | 0.74 | 0.07 | 0.04 |
|  | Nushagak | 0.37 | 0.62 | 0.01 | 0.01 |
|  | Togiak | 0.03 | 0.96 | 0.01 | 0.00 |
|  | Total | 0.14 | 0.63 | 0.08 | 0.15 |
|  | K-N | 0.15 | 0.69 | 0.11 | 0.06 |
| Predicted with | Egegik | 0.10 | 0.38 | 0.21 | 0.31 |
| the age selectivity | Ugashik | 0.15 | 0.74 | 0.07 | 0.04 |
|  | Nushagak | 0.38 | 0.61 | 0.01 | 0.01 |
|  | Togiak | 0.03 | 0.96 | 0.01 | 0.00 |
|  | Total | 0.16 | 0.61 | 0.09 | 0.14 |
|  | K-N | 0.12 | 0.72 | 0.10 | 0.06 |
|  | 0.08 | 0.40 | 0.18 | 0.35 |  |
| Predicted without | Egegik | 0.05 |  |  |  |
| the age selectivity | Ugashik | 0.14 | 0.75 | 0.06 | 0.04 |
|  | Nushagak | 0.33 | 0.66 | 0.00 | 0.01 |
|  | Togiak | 0.03 | 0.96 | 0.01 | 0.00 |

Table 3.21. Age-specific proportions in data observed up to day code 25 (July 4) of year 2001, and those in the 2001 run forecasts made at the day. The first category is the observed data available up to the day, the second category is the run forecasts made with the Port Moller selectivity for age-specific fish considered, and the third one is the run forecasts with the selectivity ignored. These values are used to draw Figure 3.15.

| Category | Area | Age 1.2 | Age 1.3 | Age 2.2 | Age 2.3 |
| :--- | :--- | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: |
|  | Port Moller | 0.03 | 0.82 | 0.05 | 0.11 |
| Observed | K-N | 0.01 | 0.93 | 0.01 | 0.05 |
|  | Egegik | 0.01 | 0.51 | 0.11 | 0.37 |
|  | Ugashik | 0.05 | 0.83 | 0.05 | 0.07 |
|  | Nushagak | 0.02 | 0.98 | 0.00 | 0.01 |
|  | Togiak | 0.02 | 0.97 | 0.00 | 0.02 |
|  | Total | 0.02 | 0.84 | 0.03 | 0.11 |
|  | K-N | 0.04 | 0.88 | 0.04 | 0.05 |
| Predicted with | Egegik | 0.01 | 0.49 | 0.15 | 0.35 |
| the age selectivity | Ugashik | 0.05 | 0.83 | 0.05 | 0.07 |
|  | Nushagak | 0.03 | 0.96 | 0.00 | 0.01 |
|  | Togiak | 0.02 | 0.97 | 0.00 | 0.02 |
|  | Total | 0.02 | 0.84 | 0.04 | 0.10 |
|  | K-N | 0.03 | 0.89 | 0.02 | 0.06 |
|  | 0.01 | 0.48 | 0.14 | 0.37 |  |
| Predicted without | Egegik | 0.05 |  |  |  |
| the age selectivity | Ugashik | 0.05 | 0.83 | 0.05 | 0.07 |
|  | Nushagak | 0.03 | 0.96 | 0.00 | 0.01 |
|  | Togiak | 0.02 | 0.97 | 0.00 | 0.02 |

## (A) Variables and parameters over time

| Time index | 1 | 2 | $\ldots \ldots$ | $i-1$ | $i$ |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Explanatory variables (data) | $X_{1}$ | $X_{2}$ | $\ldots \ldots$ | $X_{i-1}$ | $X_{i}$ |
| Parameters | $\theta_{1}$ | $\theta_{2}$ | $\ldots \ldots$. | $\theta_{i-1}$ |  |
| Response variables (data) | $Y_{1}$ | $Y_{2}$ | $\ldots \ldots$ | $Y_{i-1}$ | $Y_{i}$ |

Unobserved data: Predictive variables (note tilde mark)

## (B) Estimation of updated parameters, and prediction of unobserved data

$$
\hat{\theta}_{i-1}=f(\text { observed data })=f\left(X_{1}, X_{2}, \ldots, X_{\mathrm{i}-1}, Y_{1}, Y_{2}, \ldots, Y_{\mathrm{i}-1}\right)
$$

$\hat{Y_{i}}=f$ (explanatory variables at $i$, estimates of updated parameters)

$$
=f\left(X_{i}, \hat{\theta}_{i-1}\right)
$$

Figure 3.1. (A) Variables and parameters over time, and (B) Estimation of updated parameters, and prediction of unobserved data. Estimation of parameters is based only on observed data, and must not be affected by estimates of predictive variables. After parameters are estimated, predictive variables at time $i$ can be calculated with estimates of updated parameters and explanatory variables at time $i$.


Figure 3.2. Contingency table of the predictive run sizes. ' $r_{s, a}$ ' of each cell denotes the final run size of stock $s$ and age $a$. The final run size means the cumulative run size up to the end of the season. ' $r_{s, \bullet}$ ' and ' $r_{\bullet, a}$ ' represent the respective marginal sums. ' $R$ ' is the total sum.



$$
0.73
$$




0.71





Figure 3.3. Rogers' regression model by day. The determination coefficient $\left(R^{2}\right)$ ranges from 0.65 to 0.82 when outlier data (years 1990, 1994, 1997, and 2001) are excluded.


Age code
Figure 3.4. Comparison of age composition (in percent) in the Port Moller fishery catch (dots) and that in run size to Bristol Bay (dashed line). Age codes 1 through 4 denote ages $1.2,1.3,2.2$, and 2.3 , respectively.


Figure 3.5. The distribution of the 1999 Egegik run size estimated at the specified day. The distribution predicted at June 30 includes values above the $x$-axis limit, but I don't show them for the same scale of plots in the left column. The dotted vertical line is the actual run size.


Figure 3.6. An example of developing a location gamma density from an ordinary gamma density. The histogram is the 1999 Egegik run distribution predicted at day code 30 (July 9) by Equation 3.12, and the $y$-axis scale is adjusted as the probability density scale. In A, an ordinary gamma density is fitted to the histogram. The ordinary gamma shape looks symmetric while the histogram shape is not. I added the asterisk $\left(^{*}\right.$ ) mark to the two parameters, $\alpha^{*}$ and $\beta^{*}$ to indicate that they are different from $\alpha$ and $\beta$ shown in C . After shifting the histogram, not changing the shape, I fit another ordinary gamma density to the shifted histogram (B). And then I shift the new ordinary gamma and histogram back to the original location of the histogram (C). The location gamma has an additional parameter, $\gamma$ that indicates the minimum value of the histogram.


Figure 3.7. An example of five densities fitted to the 1999 Egegik run distribution predicted at day code 30 (July 9). Parameters in the respective six densities are estimated by maximum likelihood method.


Figure 3.8. The results of K-S goodness fit test of five parametric densities for the 1999 Egegik run size. The p-value is the average of those of five tests in Table 3.1, except for the test for the distribution predicted at day code 40 (July 19).
$D_{t, \mathrm{r}}$ : historical data that belong to day $t$ in past years $\stackrel{1}{y}$
$\stackrel{\mathrm{r}}{\theta_{t}}$ : parameters in the objective functions that are to be estimated at day $t$
$\stackrel{\mathrm{r}}{r}$ : predictive variables (run sizes) in the objective functions
(A) Normally,

$$
D_{t, \frac{\mathrm{r}}{y}} \rightarrow \stackrel{\mathrm{r}}{\theta_{t}} \rightarrow \stackrel{\mathrm{r}}{\mathrm{r}}
$$

(B) When detecting run timing earlier or later by $q$ days,

$$
D_{t \pm q, \frac{\mathrm{r}}{y}} \rightarrow{\stackrel{\mathrm{r}}{\theta_{t}}}^{\mathrm{r}} \xrightarrow[\mathrm{r}]{\mathrm{r}}
$$

Figure 3.9. An illustration of how I incorporate a run timing forecast into the estimation of run sizes. (A) In forecasting run sizes at day $t$ during the season, I use historical data, which correspond to day $t$ in past years, to estimate parameters in the objective functions. (B) When detecting run timing earlier or later by $q$ days, I use historical data that correspond to day ' $t \pm q$ ' in past years.

Forecasts of the 1999 runs


Figure 3.10. Summary of Table 3.13, where the 1999 run forecasts are compared with the actual returns. The horizontal dotted line represents the actual run size. The cross mark $(\times)$ points are run forecasts made with the run timing information incorporated, while the square marks are those made with the run timing information not incorporated.

## Forecasts of the 2000 runs



Figure 3.11. Summary of Table 3.14, where the 2000 run forecasts are compared with the actual returns. The horizontal dotted line represents the actual run size. The cross mark $(\times)$ points are run forecasts made with the run timing information incorporated, while the square marks are those made with the run timing information not incorporated.

Forecasts of the 2001 runs


Figure 3.12. Summary of Table 3.15, where the 2001 run forecasts are compared with the actual returns. The horizontal dotted line represents the actual run size. The cross mark $(\times)$ points are run forecasts made with the run timing information incorporated, while the square marks are those made with the run timing information not incorporated.


Figure 3.13. Comparison of the effect of considering the Port Moller gear selectivity for age-specific fish on the 1999 run forecasts made at day code 25 (July 4) and that of ignoring the selectivity. Dots indicate age composition (in proportion) observed up to the day, solid lines represent that in run forecasts made with the selectivity considered, and, and dashed lines are that in run forecasts made with the selectivity ignored. In case of the 'Port Moller' box, dots are age composition observed in the Port Moller fishery catch up to the day.


Figure 3.14. Comparison of the effect of considering the Port Moller gear selectivity for age-specific fish on the 2000 run forecasts made at day code 25 (July 4) and that of ignoring the selectivity. Dots indicate age composition (in proportion) observed up to the day, solid lines represent that in run forecasts made with the selectivity considered, and, and dashed lines are that in run forecasts made with the selectivity ignored. In case of the 'Port Moller' box, dots are age composition observed in the Port Moller fishery catch up to the day.


Figure 3.15. Comparison of the effect of considering the Port Moller gear selectivity for age-specific fish on the 2001 run forecasts made at day code 25 (July 4) and that of ignoring the selectivity. Dots indicate age composition (in proportion) observed up to the day, solid lines represent that in run forecasts made with the selectivity considered, and, and dashed lines are that in run forecasts made with the selectivity ignored. In case of the 'Port Moller' box, dots are age composition observed in the Port Moller fishery catch up to the day.


Figure 3.16. Relation between fish length, fish age, and the selectivity of the Port Moller gillnet fishery. The unit of selectivity is a fraction.

## CHAPTER IV. UNCERTAINTY IN ESTIMATES OF RETURNS

## INTRODUCTION

This chapter is an extension of Chapter 3, where I did the point estimates of returns. The objective of this chapter is to show uncertainty in estimates of returns. I use Bayes' law to build the distributions of forecasts. Fried and Hilborn (1988) used Bayes' law for an inseason forecast of total run size. In subsection 'Other studies of inseason forecast' under section 1.2.3 of Chapter I, the paper is reviewed. Fried and Hilborn (1988) did not estimate stock-specific returns but only total run size.

## METHODS

### 4.1. PARAMETER DISTRIBUTIONS

There were 16 parameters (Chapter 3). Regarding the parameter uncertainty, we are interested in the parameter distributions in addition to the point estimates. Generally when we estimate a predictive variable associated with distributions of parameters, we have to draw random values from the parameter distributions, and then use the values to build a distribution of the predictive variable (Gelman et al. 1995). If we apply the idea to the forecast algorithm of this thesis, we must:
(1) build distributions of parameters;
(2) draw a set of random values from the parameter distributions and pass the random values to the optimization stage (the next step);
(3) per the set of the random values from the parameter distributions in step 2, find optimized values of the predictive variables (returns) in the joint objective function;
(4) after saving the optimized values, repeat the above steps until the frequency distributions of the run estimates become smooth.

However, this above procedure could not be handled in ADMB (see the 'TPL file structure' section in Appendix I for the reasoning). As an alternative method, I treated the respective likelihood functions of the parameters (Equations 3.26, 3.34, and 3.36) as the objective functions. That is, I let the 16 parameters as well as run sizes become not-fixed quantities (see TPL file structure of Appendix I). And then, I estimated both the predictive variables (run sizes) and the parameters, simultaneously. Though this idea can be easily implemented into ADMB, it is not correct because the parameter estimates are affected by estimates of the predictive variables. The parameter estimates should be independent of the predictive variables (Figure 3.8). Because of the incorrectness, I compared the alternative method with the correct method where only data were used for the estimation of parameters. Figures 4.1, 4.2, and 4.3 show the likelihood profiles of the parameter estimates used to forecast the 1999, 2000, 2001 returns at July 4, respectively. In these figures, each solid line indicates the distribution of the respective parameter estimated by the alternative method, while each dashed line represents that estimated by the correct method. When I use the parameter estimates of the correct method for forecasts of returns, I pass the MLEs (i.e., fixed values) of the parameters to the PROCEDURE_SECTION, where the predictive returns are estimated. Regarding the $x$-axis labels and units in Figures 4.1, 4.2, and 4.3, refer to Table 4.5 and Table 3.3. The difference between those two methods in mode and variance of the respective parameter estimate was not significant except for the estimates of 'gal' $\left(G_{1}\right)$, 'ga2' $\left(G_{2}\right)$, and 'ga3' $\left(G_{3}\right)$ in Figure 4.1, and those of 'beta0' $\left(\beta_{0, t}\right)$, 'beta1' $\left(\beta_{l, t}\right)$, and 'sigma2' $\left(\sigma_{t}^{2}\right)$ in Figure 4.2. In sub-section, ‘4.2.4. Alternative method revisited,' I discuss whether the differences in parameter estimates between the two methods lead to a significant difference in the predictive returns.

### 4.2. ESTIMATION OF RETURNS

### 4.2.1. Bayesian framework

Both UW Alaska Salmon Program (ASP) and ADFG make preseason forecasts of stock- and age- specific returns. I used the preseason run forecasts for the prior information of returns in a Bayesian context. The following equation expresses the Bayes' law, ignoring a denominator constant term.

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{Pr}\left(\left.\frac{1}{r} \right\rvert\, \text { data }\right) \propto \operatorname{Pr}(\text { data } \mid \stackrel{1}{r}) \cdot \operatorname{Pr}(\stackrel{1}{r}) \tag{4.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

$\operatorname{Pr}\left(\frac{1}{r}\right)$ denotes the joint prior distribution of stock- and age- returns, and $\operatorname{Pr}(\stackrel{1}{r} \mid$ data $)$ is the joint posterior distribution of returns.
$\operatorname{Pr}\left(\right.$ data $\left.\left.\right|^{\frac{1}{r}}\right)$ represents the probability distribution of data, and it is replaced by the joint objective function of returns. To those who fully understand Chapter 3, the following (Equation 4.2) description may be redundant.

$$
\begin{align*}
& \operatorname{Pr}(\text { data } \mid \stackrel{I}{r})=\operatorname{Pr}\left(\operatorname{data}_{1}, \operatorname{data}_{2}, \ldots, \operatorname{data}_{12} \mid \stackrel{I}{r}\right) \\
& =\prod_{i=1}^{12} \operatorname{Pr}\left(\operatorname{data}_{\mathrm{i}} \mid \stackrel{\mathrm{r}}{r}\right) \tag{4.2}
\end{align*}
$$

- $\operatorname{Pr}(R 9 \varphi$ : Predictive normal distribution of unobserved data, total run size ( $R=\sum_{s} \sum_{a} r_{s, a}$ ). This term corresponds to Equation 3.3.
- $\quad \operatorname{Pr}\left(\stackrel{1}{U}_{t} \mid \stackrel{\mathrm{r}}{r}\right)$ : Joint multinomial distribution of observed data, age-specific cumulative catches up to day $t$. This term is Equation 3.5, where age-specific returns are parameters.
- $\operatorname{Pr}\left(\mu /{ }_{s, g}\right)$ : Predictive lognormal distribution of unobserved data, stock-specific run size. This term corresponds to Equation 3.15. Five lognormal distributions are considered for the five stocks (note product sign over stock $s$ ).
- $\operatorname{Pr}\left(\stackrel{1}{j}_{s, t} \mid \stackrel{\mathrm{r}}{r}\right)$ : Joint multinomial distribution of observed data, stock- and agespecific cumulative runs up to day $t$. This term is Equation 3.21, where stockand age- returns are parameters. Five multinomial distributions are considered for the five stocks (note product sign over stock $s$ ).


### 4.2.2. Prior distribution of returns

As the joint prior distribution of stock- and age- specific returns, I used two kinds: a uniform distribution and a normal distribution. When I deployed the uniform prior distribution of returns, the ' $\operatorname{Pr}\left(\frac{1}{r}\right)$ ' term in Equation 4.1 was just a constant.

In applying the normal distribution of returns to the joint prior distribution, I used preseason forecasts of returns made by UW ASP. That is, for the mean value of stockand age- specific run, I used preseason forecast (point estimate) of the run size.
However, both UW ASP and ADFG do not provide the variances of preseason forecasts. Thus, I needed to infer the variance from error mean square (MSE) of an ordinary regression model where I used the historical preseason forecast and the actual run size for the exploratory variable and the response variable, respectively. For example, when I inferred the variance of preseason forecast of Egegik- and age 1.2- run of year 2000, I built an ordinary regression model with the historical preseason forecasts of the runs prior to 2000 and the actual run sizes of the corresponding years. I took MSE of the regression model for the variance of preseason forecast of Egegik- and age 1.2-run of year 2000. Table 4.1 displays data that were used for the regression model. Tables 4.2, 4.3 , and 4.4 show the variance estimates of preseason forecasts of the 1999, 2000, and 2001 returns, respectively.

The MSE values for preseason forecasts of Togiak returns of ocean age-2 were too small (almost zero) or could not be calculated, because the actual run sizes were negligible; Togiak- and age 1.2-run was reported as 0.1 million fish, and Togiak- and age 2.2-run as 0 million fish every year (Table 4.1). For the missing MSE values, I used the average of the MSE values for preseason forecasts of Togiak returns of ocean age-3 (Tables 4.2, 4.3, and 4.4).

The respective variance estimates of preseason forecasts of stock- and agereturns were independent by stock and age, except for Togiak returns of ocean age-2. I assume independence between preseason forecasts of 20 run sizes (Figure 3.1), so the joint prior density of returns is the product of the respective normal densities of returns. That is,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{Pr}(r)=\prod_{s} \prod_{a} \operatorname{Pr}\left(r_{s, a}\right) \tag{4.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

$\operatorname{Pr}\left(r_{s, a}\right)$ is the normal density of stock $s$ - and age $a$ - run, whose mean and variance are preseason forecast of the run, and MSE of the regression model of the historical actual run sizes against the corresponding preseason forecasts.

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{Pr}\left(r_{s, a}\right) \propto \frac{1}{\sqrt{M S E_{s, a}}} \cdot \exp \left(-\frac{\left[r_{s, a}-E\left(r_{s, a}\right)\right]^{2}}{2 \cdot M S E_{s, a}}\right) \tag{4.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\mathrm{E}\left(r_{s, a}\right)$ is preseason forecast of stock- and age- specific run.

### 4.2.3. Calculation of the joint posterior distribution of returns

The Markov Chain Monte Carlo (MCMC) calculation is implemented in ADMB. MCMC is a well-known method of calculating marginal posterior distributions. When we calculate Bayes' law where a multivariate density is involved, we have to integrate the multivariate distribution over the dimensions. It is almost impossible to analytically integrate a high-dimensional distribution over the dimensions. The MCMC is a method of numerically integrating a high-dimensional distribution and sampling from a posterior distribution to build marginal posterior distributions. ADMB MCMC method uses the Metropolis-Hastings algorithm. Studies associated with the MCMC method cite mainly the following literature: Gelman et al. (1995), and Gamerman (1997).

When I calculated the marginal posterior distributions of the predictive returns, I did one million MCMC runs, and sampled the results at intervals of 30 because of autocorrelation. Because of the sequential correlation of the Markov chain, we are
advised to use the run results at intervals of some simulation runs. The procedure is called 'thinning' (Raftery and Lewis 1996; Patterson 1999).

### 4.2.4. Alternative method revisited

Because of differences in the parameter estimates between the alternative method and the correct method (Figures 4.1, 4.2 and 4.3), I checked how different the estimates of the predictive returns made by the alternative method were from those made by the classical method where point estimates (MLE) of parameters were used.

Figure 4.4 shows the posterior distributions of the 1999, 2000, and 2001 returns estimated at July 4 of the respective year by the alternative method (solid line) and the classical method (dashed line). In both cases, I incorporated run timing forecast (Table 2.5), and used the uniform densities for the prior densities of returns. In Figure 4.4, the modes of the posterior distributions made by the classical method are a little closer to the actual returns (vertical dotted line) than those made by the alternative method. But the differences were not significant (Figure 4.4), so I proceeded with the alternative method.

## RESULTS

By the hind-casting procedure, I made forecasts of the 1999, 2000, and 2001 returns at three days of the respective year: day codes 15 (June 24), 20 (June 29), and 25 (July 4). Though I also made them at day code 30 (July 9) in Chapter 3, I do not in Chapter 4 because the day (July 9) is after the half point of the return season, and forecasts of returns made after the day are not interesting. I present the marginal posterior distributions of stock-specific returns, because forecasts of stock-specific returns are of the most interest to ADFG.

### 4.3. POSTERIOR DISTRIBUTIONS

It took about 17 minutes to do one million MCMC simulation runs in ADMB with a personal computer whose CPU speed and RAM size were 750 MHz and 192 MB , respectively.

### 4.3.1. Marginal posterior distributions of stock-specific returns

Figures 4.5, 4.6, and 4.7 show the marginal posterior distributions of stock-specific returns of 1999, 2000, and 2001 made at three days (day codes 15, 20, and 25). Regardless of the prior densities of returns, the modes of the posterior distributions approach the actual returns (vertical dotted line), and the variances of the posterior distributions become narrow as forecast time progresses during the respective season (year).

### 4.3.2. Uniform prior vs. normal prior

In Figures 4.5, 4.6, and 4.7, the posterior distributions of returns from the uniform priors (solid lines) are much wider than those from the normal priors. Tables 4.6, 4.7, and 4.8 present forecast errors in terms of relative error (\%) between the modes of the posterior distributions of returns and the actual returns. The minus (-) sign indicates an under-forecast error. Generally the normal priors of returns led to smaller errors in forecasts than the uniform priors, except for the 1999 run forecasts (Tables 4.6, 4.7, and 4.8). In case of the 2001 forecasts (Table 4.8), the errors from the normal priors were all smaller than those from the uniform priors, except for the Togiak run forecasts made at June 29 and July 4.

## DISCUSSION

### 4.4. PRESEASON FORECASTS

Preseason forecasts of returns are usually not accurate enough to be used for management. Absolute values of relative errors in preseason forecasts of stock-specific
returns of 1999, 2000, and 2001 ranged from $4.4 \%$ to $130.3 \%$ (Figure 4.8). Despite the uncertainty, using the preseason forecast information for prior densities of returns increased the accuracy of the posterior distributions of returns (Tables 4.6, 4.7, and 4.8; Figures 4.5, 4.6, and 4.7).

However, as the season progresses, we should decrease our reliance on posterior distributions of returns from the normal prior densities of preseason forecasts, and increase our reliance on those from the uniform prior densities. As inseason data are accumulated, it is better not to incorporate the uncertain preseason forecast information. Figure 4.9 illustrates an example where forecasts (posterior distributions) of the 2000 returns were made at June 24 (an initial time of the season) and at July 9 (a middle time of the season). In Figure 4.9, dashed lines depict the posterior distributions from the normal prior, and solid lines depict the posterior distributions from the uniform prior. In the posterior distributions of June 24 (left column of Figure 4.9), the modes of the distributions from the normal prior are closer to the actual returns (vertical dotted line) than those from the uniform prior, but the distributions from the normal prior do not cover the actual returns securely, especially for the Ugashik and Nushagak returns. In the posterior distributions of July 9 (right column of Figure 4.9), the distributions from the uniform prior are obviously better than those from the normal; (1) the distributions from the uniform prior cover the actual returns more securely, and (2) their accuracy (in modes and variances) improves on that of the distributions of June 24 (left column).

### 4.5. PORT MOLLER FISHERY DATA

It costs about US $\$ 100,000$ to deploy the Port Moller test fishery per season. There is no literature that evaluates the test fishery's value. The traditional inseason forecast method (Rogers' regression model) with the Port Moller catch data has been questionable. The determination coefficients $\left(R^{2}\right)$ of Rogers' regression model ranged from 0.65 to 0.82 , where data of outlier years ( $1990,1994,1997$, and 2001) are excluded (Figure 3.2). When data of outlier years were included, the coefficient was only about
0.46 (Figure 1.7). In response to this uncertainty, a question may be raised: say, 'Is such a uncertain forecast worth the monetary value?'

I examine a contribution of the Port Moller catch data to forecasts of returns.
Figure 4.10 shows the effect of absence of the Port Moller data on forecasts of returns, displaying forecasts (posterior distributions) of the 2001 returns made at June 24 (an initial time of the season) and July 14 (a final time of the season). In Figure 4.10, dashed lines represent the posterior distributions calculated without the objective functions of Port Moller data (the first and second components in Table 3.2), and solid lines are those calculated with them as well as the other objective functions. For both cases, the uniform prior densities of returns are used, and run timing information is incorporated accordingly. In posterior distributions of July 14 (right column of Figure 4.10), the two lines are almost identical; i.e. the absence of the Port Moller data does not make a difference in forecasts made at a final time of the season. However, in posterior distributions of June 24 (left column of Figure 4.10), the distributions made without the Port Moller data (dashed lines) are extremely inaccurate. This indicates that the Port Moller data are necessary to forecasts made at an initial time of the season.

Table 4.1. Data that are used to calculate the variances of preseason forecasts by stock and age. The unit of the actual and forecast run size is number in thousands. KN denotes Kvichak-Naknek.

| Year | District | Age | Actual | Forecast | Year | District | Age | Actual | Forecast |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1992 | KN | 1.2 | 2,930 | 3,300 | 1994 | Ugashik | 2.2 | 2,479 | 1,700 |
| 1992 | KN | 1.3 | 3,940 | 2,500 | 1994 | Ugashik | 2.3 | 2,252 | 400 |
| 1992 | KN | 2.2 | 5,236 | 6,400 | 1995 | Ugashik | 1.2 | 2,034 | 600 |
| 1992 | KN | 2.3 | 4,157 | 1,600 | 1995 | Ugashik | 1.3 | 709 | 1,700 |
| 1993 | KN | 1.2 | 2,727 | 3,500 | 1995 | Ugashik | 2.2 | 2,302 | 1,300 |
| 1993 | KN | 1.3 | 3,414 | 1,900 | 1995 | Ugashik | 2.3 | 955 | 1,400 |
| 1993 | KN | 2.2 | 5,180 | 5,100 | 1996 | Ugashik | 1.2 | 191 | 900 |
| 1993 | KN | 2.3 | 4,005 | 2,600 | 1996 | Ugashik | 1.3 | 3,167 | 3,700 |
| 1994 | KN | 1.2 | 2,208 | 5,400 | 1996 | Ugashik | 2.2 | 597 | 1,200 |
| 1994 | KN | 1.3 | 2,780 | 2,300 | 1996 | Ugashik | 2.3 | 1,218 | 2,000 |
| 1994 | KN | 2.2 | 20,158 | 13,400 | 1997 | Ugashik | 1.2 | 265 | 700 |
| 1994 | KN | 2.3 | 1,144 | 2,100 | 1997 | Ugashik | 1.3 | 597 | 700 |
| 1995 | KN | 1.2 | 3,434 | 2,200 | 1997 | Ugashik | 2.2 | 1,013 | 1,000 |
| 1995 | KN | 1.3 | 2,552 | 3,500 | 1997 | Ugashik | 2.3 | 326 | 500 |
| 1995 | KN | 2.2 | 22,780 | 36,000 | 1998 | Ugashik | 1.2 | 333 | 800 |
| 1995 | KN | 2.3 | 3,898 | 4,700 | 1998 | Ugashik | 1.3 | 352 | 600 |
| 1996 | KN | 1.2 | 795 | 2,400 | 1998 | Ugashik | 2.2 | 241 | 1,100 |
| 1996 | KN | 1.3 | 6,661 | 3,700 | 1998 | Ugashik | 2.3 | 827 | 700 |
| 1996 | KN | 2.2 | 1,114 | 2,400 | 1999 | Ugashik | 1.2 | 2,816 | 600 |
| 1996 | KN | 2.3 | 2,715 | 4,700 | 1999 | Ugashik | 1.3 | 328 | 1,000 |
| 1997 | KN | 1.2 | 1,272 | 6,200 | 1999 | Ugashik | 2.2 | 692 | 1,000 |
| 1997 | KN | 1.3 | 851 | 1,900 | 1999 | Ugashik | 2.3 | 198 | 100 |
| 1997 | KN | 2.2 | 882 | 1,700 | 2000 | Ugashik | 1.2 | 402 | 400 |
| 1997 | KN | 2.3 | 513 | 2,100 | 2000 | Ugashik | 1.3 | 0 | 4,500 |
| 1998 | KN | 1.2 | 2,476 | 6,200 | 2000 | Ugashik | 2.2 | 0 | 400 |
| 1998 | KN | 1.3 | 2,441 | 2,000 | 2000 | Ugashik | 2.3 | 0 | 400 |
| 1998 | KN | 2.2 | 1,180 | 4,600 | 1992 | Nushagak | 1.2 | 2,016 | 1,100 |
| 1998 | KN | 2.3 | 564 | 1,700 | 1992 | Nushagak | 1.3 | 1,878 | 2,500 |
| 1999 | KN | 1.2 | 10,269 | 5,800 | 1993 | Nushagak | 1.2 | 2,925 | 1,300 |
| 1999 | KN | 1.3 | 2,035 | 2,500 | 1993 | Nushagak | 1.3 | 3,907 | 3,800 |
| 1999 | KN | 2.2 | 4,252 | 8,400 | 1993 | Nushagak | 2.3 | 131 | 100 |
| 1999 | KN | 2.3 | 1,237 | 1,000 | 1994 | Nushagak | 1.2 | 1,299 | 1,900 |
| 2000 | KN | 1.2 | 402 | 3,000 | 1994 | Nushagak | 1.3 | 3,744 | 2,600 |
| 2000 | KN | 1.3 | 2,340 | 8,800 | 1994 | Nushagak | 2.2 | 73 | 200 |
| 2000 | KN | 2.2 | 723 | 3,600 | 1995 | Nushagak | 1.2 | 3,123 | 1,300 |
| 2000 | KN | 2.3 | 338 | 1,300 | 1995 | Nushagak | 1.3 | 2,890 | 3,300 |
| 1992 | Egegik | 1.2 | 413 | 700 | 1995 | Nushagak | 2.2 | 487 | 100 |
| 1992 | Egegik | 1.3 | 4,561 | 2,000 | 1995 | Nushagak | 2.3 | 96 | 100 |
| 1992 | Egegik | 2.2 | 8,863 | 5,300 | 1996 | Nushagak | 1.2 | 2,670 | 1,800 |
| 1992 | Egegik | 2.3 | 4,515 | 2,300 | 1996 | Nushagak | 1.3 | 4,790 | 4,800 |
| 1993 | Egegik | 1.2 | 513 | 400 | 1996 | Nushagak | 2.2 | 60 | 200 |
| 1993 | Egegik | 1.3 | 1,278 | 1,100 | 1996 | Nushagak | 2.3 | 322 | 200 |
| 1993 | Egegik | 2.2 | 11,061 | 11,000 | 1997 | Nushagak | 1.2 | 1,910 | 1,700 |
| 1993 | Egegik | 2.3 | 11,239 | 5,700 | 1997 | Nushagak | 1.3 | 2,472 | 3,600 |
| 1994 | Egegik | 1.2 | 403 | 400 | 1997 | Nushagak | 2.2 | 107 | 200 |

Table 4.1. (continued)

| Year | District | Age | Actual | Forecast | Year | District | Age | Actual | Forecast |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1994 | Egegik | 1.3 | 456 | 1,200 | 1997 | Nushagak | 2.3 | 110 | 100 |
| 1994 | Egegik | 2.2 | 6,063 | 2,900 | 1998 | Nushagak | 1.2 | 3,066 | 2,900 |
| 1994 | Egegik | 2.3 | 5,650 | 11,700 | 1998 | Nushagak | 1.3 | 2,280 | 2,900 |
| 1995 | Egegik | 1.2 | 1,397 | 800 | 1998 | Nushagak | 2.2 | 150 | 300 |
| 1995 | Egegik | 1.3 | 867 | 1,100 | 1998 | Nushagak | 2.3 | 86 | 0 |
| 1995 | Egegik | 2.2 | 9,598 | 5,500 | 2000 | Nushagak | 1.2 | 804 | 1,500 |
| 1995 | Egegik | 2.3 | 3,979 | 4,700 | 2000 | Nushagak | 1.3 | 0 | 3,800 |
| 1996 | Egegik | 1.2 | 335 | 800 | 2000 | Nushagak | 2.2 | 0 | 300 |
| 1996 | Egegik | 1.3 | 3,939 | 1,700 | 2000 | Nushagak | 2.3 | 0 | 300 |
| 1996 | Egegik | 2.2 | 3,113 | 6,000 | 1992 | Togiak | 1.2 | 111 | 100 |
| 1996 | Egegik | 2.3 | 4,721 | 7,200 | 1992 | Togiak | 1.3 | 575 | 400 |
| 1997 | Egegik | 1.2 | 497 | 1,300 | 1993 | Togiak | 1.2 | 132 | 100 |
| 1997 | Egegik | 1.3 | 1,117 | 3,600 | 1993 | Togiak | 1.3 | 403 | 400 |
| 1997 | Egegik | 2.2 | 4,963 | 6,700 | 1994 | Togiak | 1.2 | 101 | 100 |
| 1997 | Egegik | 2.3 | 2,607 | 2,300 | 1994 | Togiak | 1.3 | 328 | 400 |
| 1998 | Egegik | 1.2 | 368 | 600 | 1994 | Togiak | 2.3 | 53 | 100 |
| 1998 | Egegik | 1.3 | 573 | 1,000 | 1995 | Togiak | 1.2 | 189 | 100 |
| 1998 | Egegik | 2.2 | 880 | 3,700 | 1995 | Togiak | 1.3 | 460 | 400 |
| 1998 | Egegik | 2.3 | 3,099 | 3,300 | 1996 | Togiak | 1.2 | 50 | 100 |
| 1999 | Egegik | 1.2 | 3,173 | 600 | 1996 | Togiak | 1.3 | 429 | 600 |
| 1999 | Egegik | 1.3 | 985 | 1,100 | 1996 | Togiak | 2.3 | 37 | 100 |
| 1999 | Egegik | 2.2 | 4,246 | 4,700 | 1997 | Togiak | 1.2 | 64 | 100 |
| 1999 | Egegik | 2.3 | 993 | 1,300 | 1997 | Togiak | 1.3 | 124 | 300 |
| 2000 | Egegik | 1.2 | 0 | 1,100 | 1997 | Togiak | 2.3 | 29 | 100 |
| 2000 | Egegik | 1.3 | 0 | 5,000 | 1998 | Togiak | 1.2 | 43 | 100 |
| 2000 | Egegik | 2.2 | 0 | 4,400 | 1998 | Togiak | 1.3 | 229 | 300 |
| 2000 | Egegik | 2.3 | 0 | 3,100 | 1998 | Togiak | 2.2 | 6 | 0 |
| 1992 | Ugashik | 1.2 | 463 | 800 | 1998 | Togiak | 2.3 | 30 | 0 |
| 1992 | Ugashik | 1.3 | 1,626 | 1,600 | 1999 | Togiak | 1.2 | 341 | 100 |
| 1992 | Ugashik | 2.2 | 1,875 | 1,100 | 1999 | Togiak | 1.3 | 166 | 200 |
| 1992 | Ugashik | 2.3 | 1,750 | 500 | 1999 | Togiak | 2.2 | 31 | 0 |
| 1993 | Ugashik | 1.2 | 694 | 1,500 | 1999 | Togiak | 2.3 | 15 | 0 |
| 1993 | Ugashik | 1.3 | 692 | 1,600 | 2000 | Togiak | 1.2 | 0 | 100 |
| 1993 | Ugashik | 2.2 | 2,144 | 1,500 | 2000 | Togiak | 1.3 | 0 | 900 |
| 1993 | Ugashik | 2.3 | 2,310 | 900 | 2000 | Togiak | 2.2 | 0 | 0 |
| 1994 | Ugashik | 1.2 | 345 | 600 | 2000 | Togiak | 2.3 | 0 | 100 |
| 1994 | Ugashik | 1.3 | 391 | 900 |  |  |  |  |  |

Table 4.2. The variances of the 1999 preseason forecasts by stock and age. The MSE values for preseason forecasts of Togiak returns of ocean age-2 could not be calculated, so the values were replaced by the average of the MSE values for preseason forecasts of Togiak returns of ocean age-3. That is, 5,652 is the mean value of 8,266 and 3,037 (see the bottom row). The unit is (number in thousands) ${ }^{2}$.

|  | Age1.2 | Age1.3 | Age2.2 | Age2.3 |
| :--- | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: |
| K-N | $3,401,351$ | 402,272 | $40,354,778$ | $1,845,376$ |
| Egegik | 111,155 | 986,878 | $5,580,280$ | $11,947,424$ |
| Ugashik | 112,754 | 178,560 | 38,138 | 402,164 |
| Nushagak | 426,042 | 375,807 | 3,666 | 1,845 |
| Togiak | 5,652 | 8,266 | 5,652 | 3,037 |

Table 4.3. The variances of the 2000 preseason forecasts by stock and age. The MSE values for preseason forecasts of Togiak returns of ocean age-2 could not be calculated, so the values were replaced by the average of the MSE values for preseason forecasts of Togiak returns of ocean age-3. That is, 5,457 is the mean value of 8,763 and 2,150 (see the bottom row). The unit is (number in thousands) ${ }^{2}$.

|  | Age1.2 | Age1.3 | Age2.2 | Age2.3 |
| :--- | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: |
| K-N | $3,154,284$ | 346,226 | $34,743,877$ | $1,806,658$ |
| Egegik | 96,060 | 854,278 | $4,664,666$ | $10,621,201$ |
| Ugashik | 94,326 | 153,293 | 33,322 | 435,728 |
| Nushagak | 426,042 | 375,807 | 3,666 | 1,845 |
| Togiak | 5,457 | 8,763 | 5,457 | 2,150 |

Table 4.4. The variances of the 2001 preseason forecasts by stock and age. The MSE values for preseason forecasts of Togiak returns of ocean age- 2 could not be calculated, so the values were replaced by the average of the MSE values for preseason forecasts of Togiak returns of ocean age-3. That is, 24,482 is the mean value of 45,772 and 3,193 (see the bottom row). The unit is (number in thousands) ${ }^{2}$.

|  | Age1.2 | Age1.3 | Age2.2 | Age2.3 |
| :--- | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: |
| K-N | $2,805,521$ | $5,462,567$ | $30,058,333$ | $1,573,821$ |
| Egegik | 98,919 | $2,188,391$ | $4,122,386$ | $9,148,752$ |
| Ugashik | 106,882 | $1,895,483$ | 56,287 | 382,698 |
| Nushagak | 355,097 | 609,315 | 3,238 | 13,327 |
| Togiak | 24,482 | 45,772 | 24,482 | 3,193 |

Table 4.5. Labels in Figures 4.1, 4.2, and 4.3. Table 3.3 shows a detailed description about the parameters and their units.

| Label | Correct notation |
| :--- | :--- |
| beta0, beta1, sigma2 | $\beta_{0, t}, \beta_{1, t}, \sigma_{t}^{2}$ |
| logmu_KN, logsigma2_KN | $\mu_{1, t}, \sigma_{1, t}{ }^{2}$ |
| logmu_E, logsigma2_E | $\mu_{2, t}, \sigma_{2, t}{ }^{2}$ |
| logmu_U, logsigma2_U | $\mu_{3, t}, \sigma_{3, t^{2}}$ |
| logmu_N, logsigma2_N | $\mu_{4, t}, \sigma_{4, t^{2}}$ |
| logmu_T, logsigma2_T | $\mu_{5, t}, \sigma_{5, t}{ }^{2}$ |
| ga1, ga2, ga3 | $G_{1}, G_{2}, G_{3}$ |

Table 4.6. Forecast errors (\%) in posterior distributions of the 1999 returns calculated at the given day with the two prior densities of runs being used: uniform and normal. The error values are a relative difference between the modes of the posterior distributions in Figure 4.5 and the corresponding actual returns. The minus (-) sign indicates an underforecast.

| District | June 24 |  | June 29 |  | July 4 |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Uniform | Normal | Uniform | Normal | Uniform | Normal |
| K-N | -53.5 | -5.7 | 4.5 | -21.1 | 13.6 | -1.7 |
| Egegik | -38.5 | -53.1 | 22.0 | -32.0 | 60.6 | -31.2 |
| Ugashik | 521.3 | -25.5 | 123.8 | -26.2 | 16.2 | -27.1 |
| Nushagak | -7.1 | -25.5 | -54.5 | -29.9 | 51.3 | -19.2 |
| Togiak | 22.0 | -32.9 | 355.5 | -18.2 | -70.4 | -31.4 |

Table 4.7. Forecast errors (\%) in posterior distributions of the 2000 returns calculated at the given day with the two prior densities of runs being used: uniform and normal. The error values are a relative difference between the modes of the posterior distributions in Figure 4.6 and the corresponding actual returns. The minus (-) sign indicates an underforecast.

|  |  |  | June 24 |  | June 29 |  |
| :--- | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: |

Table 4.8. Forecast errors (\%) in posterior distributions of the 2001 returns calculated at the given day with the two prior densities of runs being used: uniform and normal. The error values are a relative difference between the modes of the posterior distributions in Figure 4.7 and the corresponding actual returns. The minus (-) sign indicates an underforecast.

|  | June 24 |  | June 29 |  | July 4 |  |
| :--- | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: | ---: |
| District | Uniform | Normal | Uniform | Normal | Uniform | Normal |
| K-N | 162.1 | -3.4 | 104.2 | 0.2 | 84.7 | 5.7 |
| Egegik | 251.4 | 81.1 | 154.0 | 76.3 | 75.9 | 52.2 |
| Ugashik | 755.1 | 176.7 | 453.1 | 143.1 | 391.4 | 98.3 |
| Nushagak | 77.7 | 0.2 | 132.3 | 1.7 | 153.5 | 1.8 |
| Togiak | -67.8 | -65.8 | 14.0 | -57.9 | -24.2 | -49.8 |



Figure 4.1. Comparison of the alternative method (solid line) and the correct method (dashed line) in the likelihood profiles of the parameter estimates that are used for making the 1999 run forecasts at July 4. Regarding the $x$-axis labels and units, refer to Table 4.5 and Table 3.3.


Figure 4.2. Comparison of the alternative method (solid line) and the correct method (dashed line) in the likelihood profiles of the parameter estimates that are used for making the 2000 run forecasts at July 4. Regarding the $x$-axis labels and units, refer to Table 4.5 and Table 3.3.


Figure 4.3. Comparison of the alternative method (solid line) and the correct method (dashed line) in the likelihood profiles of the parameter estimates that are used for making the 2001 run forecasts at July 4. Regarding the $x$-axis labels and units, refer to Table 4.5 and Table 3.3.


Figure 4.4. Comparison of the alternative method (solid line) and the classical method (dashed line) in posterior distributions of the 1999, 2000 and 2001 returns estimated at July 4 of the respective year. The vertical dot line refers to the actual run size. In both cases, I incorporated run timing forecast (Table 2.5) accordingly, and used the uniform densities for the prior densities of returns.


Figure 4.5. Marginal posterior distributions of stock-specific returns of 1999 made at three days: June 24, June 29, and July 4 (each column). Solid lines are the posterior distributions with the uniform prior densities used, and dashed lines are those with the normal prior densities used. Run timing forecast was incorporated accordingly (Table 2.5).


## Run size (thousands)

Figure 4.6. Marginal posterior distributions of stock-specific returns of 2000 made at three days: June 24, June 29, and July 4 (each column). Solid lines are the posterior distributions with the uniform prior densities used, and dashed lines are those with the normal prior densities used. Run timing forecast was incorporated accordingly (Table 2.5).


Run size (thousands)
Figure 4.7. Marginal posterior distributions of stock-specific returns of 2001 made at three days: June 24, June 29, and July 4 (each column). Solid lines are the posterior distributions with the uniform prior densities used, and dashed lines are those with the normal prior densities used. Run timing forecast was incorporated accordingly (Table 2.5).


## Stock

Figure 4.8. Relative errors (\%) in preseason forecasts of stock-specific returns of 1999, 2000, and 2001. The negative errors indicate under-forecasts. KN: Kvichak-Naknek; E: Egegik; U: Ugashik; N: Nushagak; T: Togiak.


Run size (thousands)
Figure 4.9. An example illustrating that the normal prior densities of returns decrease the forecast accuracy as time progresses during the season. Forecasts (posterior distributions) of the 2000 returns are made at June 24 (an initial time of the season; left column) and July 9 (a middle time of the season; right column). Dashed lines are the posterior distributions with the normal prior used, and solid lines are those with the uniform prior used.


Figure 4.10. An example showing importance of the Port Moller fishery data. The 2000 run forecasts are made at June 24 (an initial time of the season; left column) and July 14 (a final time of the season; right column) without the Port Moller fishery data (dashed line) and with the data (solid line). The absence of the Port Moller data leads to extremely poor forecasts of returns during the initial stage of the season, but it does not make any difference during the final stage.

## CHAPTER V. CONCLUSIONS

An accurate forecast of fish run timing will improve a forecast of salmon run size because it indicates the percentage of final run size that pass an area of interest on a certain day. Forecasts of returns, made with the incorporation of run timing detected from the Port Moller test fishery data, were less biased than those made without the run timing incorporation (Tables 3.13, 3.14, and 3.15; Figures 3.8, 3.9, and 3.10). However, the run timing detection by the Port Moller data is quite uncertain. For example, yearly Port Moller RTI evaluated even at the last day of the test fishery (day code 30) does not account for about $41 \%$ of variation in yearly run timing of four district fish (except the Togiak stock); in Figure 2.6, the determination coefficient ( $R^{2}$ ) between Port Moller RTI of day code 30 and the inshore RTI is about $59 \%\left(=0.77^{2}\right)$.

Also yearly Port Moller RTI does not capture well the fluctuation magnitude in yearly run timing of four district fish (Figure 2.6). Because I subtract the average of Port Moller RTI estimates of years prior to a season of interest from Port Moller RTI of the season to detect how early or how late fish run timing of the season is different from those of the past years (Equation 2.4), the fluctuation magnitude is an important statistic.

Because of the uncertainty in Port Moller RTI as a run timing estimate, I suggest that managers should also use other indicators in judging fish run timing. For example, seawater temperature may be a run timing index of the Bristol Bay sockeye salmon. A few studies reported that seawater temperature was negatively correlated with the run timing of the Bristol Bay sockeye salmon (Burgner 1980, Nishiyama 1984): the warmer the ocean is, the earlier the fish return. Variability in the fish ocean distribution in response to ocean temperature may explain the negative correlation. The distribution is farther north and closer to coastal waters near their natal streams during warm years and thus the fish can arrive at their home streams earlier than during cold years when the ocean distribution is farther south to the open waters of the North Pacific ocean (Rogers 1984). However, seawater temperature also is an uncertain indicator of fish run timing. Burgner (1991) reported that inter-annual differences in early spring ocean surface
temperatures accounted for about $50 \%$ of the deviation in run timing of the Bristol Bay sockeye salmon.

Given the uncertainty in a run timing forecast, managers may opt to compare several hypotheses regarding fish run timing based on as much information as they can collect such as Port Moller RTI, environmental data, anecdotal stories, and experiences. Managers can simulate those hypotheses by simply changing day code in the forecast ADMB program (section 3.6. Incorporation of run timing forecast; Appendix). Figure 5.1 shows an example of the idea where forecasts (posterior distributions) of 2001 returns are estimated at day code 20 (June 29) under three hypotheses regarding fish run timing: (1) fish run timing in the 2001 season is earlier by five days than the average of those in the past year seasons (dashed line), (2) it is not different (dashed and three-dotted line), and (3) it is later by five days (solid line). Posterior distributions in the left column of Figure 5.1 are from the uniform prior densities, and those in the right column are from the normal prior densities of preseason forecasts.

In estimating returns, I used all data available (inseason and historical data) (Table 3.2). In addition, I could add information of preseason forecasts of returns into the estimation by the Bayesian method. During the initial stage of the season, posterior distributions of returns from the normal prior of preseason forecasts were generally better than those from the uniform prior. However, the contribution of the preseason forecasts will depend on how accurate they are. As inseason data are accumulated in time during the season, we should decrease reliance on the preseason forecast information

Regarding forecasts of the Bristol Bay sockeye salmon returns, many studies have been done. One of the recent studies is the research of Adkison and Peterman (2000). Adkison and Peterman (2000) examined errors of various forecast models with possible permutations of the following predictors: spawner-recruit relationships, air temperature, sea surface temperature, Pacific Decadal Oscillation, North Pacific Index, sibling returns to date, and last year's deviation from the expected return. Adkison and Peterman (2000) found that the accuracy of any model was not better that the historical accuracy of the ADFG and UW ASP forecasts. The study reminds me that it is very hard to make an accurate forecast in a large ecosystem.

The value of this thesis is the development of a forecast algorithm for the Bristol Bay sockeye salmon returns rather than a remarkable improvement of the forecast accuracy. Managers may find the forecast algorithm useful for a management tool.

Recently Flynn and Hilborn (In preparation) developed a new model whose forecast of sockeye salmon run size to Bristol Bay is much less biased than the traditional forecast model. As future work, I suggest that the model should be incorporated into the current forecast algorithm of this thesis.


Figure 5.1. An example exploring several hypotheses regarding run timing. Posterior distributions of the 2001 returns are estimated at day code 20 (June 29) under three hypotheses: (1) fish run timing in the 2001 season is later by five days than those of the past year seasons (solid line), (2) it is not different from those of the past year seasons (dashed and dotted line), and (3) it is earlier by five days than those of the past year seasons (dashed line). Posterior distributions in the left column are from the uniform prior, and those in the right column are from the normal prior (preseason forecasts).

## REFERENCES

Adkison, M.D., and R.M. Peterman. 2000. Predictability of Bristol Bay, Alaska, sockeye salmon returns one to four years in the future. N. Am. J. Fish. Manage. 20: 69-80.

Alaska Department of Fish and Game (ADFG). 1998. Division of Commercial Fisheries, annual management report. Bristol Bay area. Regional Information Report, No. 2A99-18. 155 pp.

Anonymous. 1994. Manual. Autodif: A C++ array language extension with automatic differentiation for use in nonlinear modeling and statistics. Otter Research Ltd., Sidney.

Anonymous. 2000. Manual. An introduction to AD Model Builder version 4: For use in nonlinear modeling and statistics. Otter Research Ltd., Sidney.

Brannian, L.K., O.A. Mathisen, and D.A. McCaughran. 1982. Variance estimates of sockeye salmon predictions with reference to the Egegik River system of Bristol Bay, Alaska. Final Report for the period January 1, 1982-June 30, 1982 to Alaska Department of Fish and Game. Contract No. 82-0769. University of Washington, Fisheries Research Institute, Seattle. 105 pp.

Burgner, R.L. 1980. Some feature of ocean migrations and timing of Pacific salmon, p. 153-164. In W.J. McNeil and D.C. Himsworth (eds.). Salmonid Ecosystems of the North Pacific. Oregon State University Press, Corvallis.

Burgner, R.L. 1991. Life history of sockeye salmon (Oncorhynchus nerka), p. 1-117. In C. Groot and L. Margolis (eds.). Pacific salmon life histories. University of British Columbia Press, Vancouver, BC, Canada.

Casella, G., and R.L. Berger. 1990. Statistical inference. Duxbury Press, Belmont, California. 650 pp .

Chen, X.H., and P.A. Shelton. 1996. A nonparametric forecast model of inshore Atlantic cod (Gadus morhua) landings based on biomass, cumulative landings, and water temperature. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 53: 558-562.

Crone, P.R., and D.B. Sampson. 1998. Evaluation of assumed error structure in stock assessment models that use sample estimates of age composition, p. 355-370. In Funk, F, T.J. Quinn II, J. Heifetz, J.N. Ianelli, J.E. Powers, J.F. Schweigert, P.J. Sullivan, and C.-I. Zhang (eds.). Fishery stock assessment models. Alaska Sea Grant College Program Report No. AK-SG-98-01, University of Alaska Fairbanks.

Eggers, D., and S. Fried. 1984. 1982 Bristol Bay test fishing projects. Alaska Department of Fish and Game (ADFG) Technical Data Report 117: 81 pp .

Eggers, D.M., and D.E. Rogers. 1987. The cycle of runs of sockeye salmon (Oncorhynchus nerka) to the Kvichak River, Bristol Bay, Alaska: cyclic dominance or depensatory fishing?, p. 343-366. In H.D. Smith, L. Margolis, and C.C. Wood (eds.). Sockeye salmon (Oncorhynchus nerka) population biology and future management. Can. Spec. Publ. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 96.

Flynn, L., and R. Hilborn. In preparation. Test fishery indices for sockeye salmon as affected by age composition and environmental variables.

Foerster, R.E. 1968. The sockeye salmon, Oncorhynchus nerka. Bull. Fish. Res. Board Can. 162.

Fredin, R.A. 1980. Trends in North Pacific salmon fisheries, p. 59-119. In W.J. McNeil and D.C. Himsworth (eds.). Salmonid Ecosystems of the North Pacific. Oregon State University Press, Corvalis.

Fredin, R.A., R.L. Major, R.G. Bakkala, and G. Tanonaka. 1977. Pacific salmon and the high seas salmon fisheries of Japan. Natl. Ocean. Atmos. Admin., Natl. Mar. Fish. Serv., Northwest and Alaska Fish. Center., Seattle, Proc. Rep., 327 p.

French, R., H. Bilton, M. Osako, and A. Hartt. 1976. Distribution and origin of sockeye salmon (Oncorhynchus nerka) in offshore waters of the North Pacific Ocean. Int. North Pac. Fish. Comm. Bull. 34.

Fried, S.M., and R. Hilborn. 1988. Inseason forecasting of Bristol Bay, Alaska, sockeye salmon (Oncorhynchus nerka) abundance using Bayesian probability theory. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 45: 850-855.

Fried, S.M., and H.J. Yuen. 1987. Forecasting sockeye salmon (Oncorhynchus nerka) returns to Bristol Bay, Alaska: A review and critique of methods, p.273-279. In H.D. Smith, L. Margolis, and C.C. Wood (eds.). Sockeye salmon (Oncorhynchus nerka) population biology and future management. Can. Spec. Publ. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 96.

Fried, S.M., B.A. Cross, and H.J. Yuen. 1988. A synopsis and critique of forecasts of sockeye salmon returning to Bristol Bay, Alaska in 1988. Alaska Department of Fish and Game, Division of Commercial Fisheries. 32 pp.

Gamerman, D. 1997. Markov Chain Monte Carlo: Stochastic simulation for Bayesian inference. Texts in statistical science. Chapman \& Hall, London. 245 pp.

Gelman, A., J.B. Carlin, H.S. Stern, and D.B. Rubin. 1995. Bayesian data analysis. Texts in statistical science. Chapman \& Hall, London. 526 pp.

Helton, D.R. 1991. An analysis of the Port Moller offshore test fishing forecast of sockeye and chum salmon runs to Bristol Bay, Alaska. M.S. thesis, University of Washington, Seattle. 122 pp.

Hilborn, R., D. Rogers, R. Steen, and W. Lew. 1999. Forecast of the 2000 run of sockeye salmon to Bristol Bay. Univ. Washington. School of Fisheries, FRIUW 9910. Seattle.

Hilborn, R. Personal communication. Email address: rayh@u.washington.edu
Hoar, W.S. 1976. Smolt transformation: evolution, behavior, and physiology. J. Fish. Res. Board Can. 33: 1234-1252.

Johnson, N.L., and S. Kotz. 1970. Continuous univariate distributions 1. Houghton Mifflin Company, Boston. 300 pp.

Koo, T.S.Y. 1962. Age designation in salmon. Contribution No. 106., p. 37-48. In T.S.Y. Koo (ed.). Studies of Alaska red salmon. University of Washington Press. Seattle, Washington. College of Fisheries, University of Washington. 1: 449 pp .

Lew, W.R. Personal communication. Email address: wlew@fish.washington.edu
Mathews, S. 1967. The economic consequences of forecasting sockeye salmon runs to Bristol Bay, Alaska: A computer simulation study of the potential benefits to a salmon canning industry from accurate forecasts of the runs. Ph.D. dissertation, Univ. of Washington, Seattle. 238 pp.

Mathisen, O.A., and M. Berg. 1968. Growth rates of the char in the Vardnes River, Troms, northern Norway. Institute of Freshwater Research, Drottningholm, Report 48.

McKinstry, C.A. 1993. Forecasting migratory timing and abundance of pink salmon (Oncorhynchus gorbuscha) runs using sex-ratio information. MS thesis, Univ. of Washington, Seattle. 74 pp .

Minard, R.E., and C.P. Meacham. 1987. Sockeye salmon (Oncorhynchus nerka) management in Bristol Bay, Alaska, p. 336-342. In H.D. Smith, L. Margolis, and C.C. Wood (eds.). Sockeye salmon (Oncorhynchus nerka) population biology and future management. Can. Spec. Publ. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 96.

Mundy, P.R. 1979. A quantitative measure of migratory timing illustrated by application to the management of commercial salmon fisheries. Ph.D. dissertation, Univ. of Washington, Seattle, Wash. 86 pp.

Nishiyama, T. 1974. Energy requirements of Bristol Bay sockeye salmon in the central Bering Sea and Bristol Bay, p. 321-343. In D.W. Hood and E.J. Kelly (eds.). Oceanography of the Bering Sea. Univ. Alaska, Inst. Mar. Sci., Occ. Publ. 2.

Nishiyama, T. 1984. Two important factors in oceanic stages of salmon: food and temperature, p. 227-258. In Proceedings of the Pacific salmon biology conference (USSR, USA, Canada, Japan), Yuzhno-Sakhalinsk, USSR, 1978. Tikhookeanskii Nauchno-Issledovatel'skii Institut Rybnogo Khoziaistva i Okeanografii, Vladivostok, USSR.

Patterson, K.R. 1999. Evaluating uncertainty in harvest control law catches using Bayesian Markov Chain Monte Carlo virtual population analysis with adaptive rejection sampling and including structural uncertainty. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 56: 208-221.

Pearcy, W.G. 1992. Ocean ecology of North Pacific salmonids. Washington Sea Grant Program, University of Washington Press, Seattle and London.

Peterman, R.M. 1981. Form of random variation in salmon smolt-to-adult relations and its influence on production estimates. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 38: 1113-1119.

Peterman, R.M. 1982a. Nonlinear relation between smolts and adults in Babine Lake sockeye salmon (Oncorhynchus nerka) and implications for other salmon populations. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 39: 904-913.

Peterman, R.M. 1982b. Model of salmon age structure and its use in preseason forecasting and studies of marine survival. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 39: 14441452.

Raftery, A.E., and S.M. Lewis. 1996. Implementing MCMC, p. 115-127. In W.R. Gilks, S. Richardson, and D.J. Spielgehalter (eds.). Markov Chain Monte Carlo in practice. Chapman and Hall, London.

Rogers, D.E. 1984. Trends in abundance of northeastern Pacific stocks of salmon, p. 100-127. In W.G. Pearcy (ed.). The Influence of Ocean Conditions on the Production of Salmonids in the North Pacific. Oregon State University Sea Grant Program, Corvallis.

Rogers, D.E. 1986. Pacific salmon, p. 461-476. In D.W. Hood and S.T. Zimmerman (eds.) The Gulf of Alaska: physical environment and biological resources.
U.S. National Ocean Service, Ocean Assessments Division, Alaska Office; U.S. Minerals Management Service, Alaska OCS Region, Washington, D.C.

Rogers, D.E. 1987. The regulation of age at maturity in Wood River sockeye salmon (Oncorhynchus nerka), p. 78-89. In H.D. Smith, L. Margolis, and C.C. Wood (eds.). Sockeye salmon (Oncorhynchus nerka) population biology and future management. Can. Spec. Publ. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 96.

Rogers, D.E. 1994. Forecasts of the 1995 sockeye salmon runs to Bristol Bay. FRI-UW 9417. Univ. Washington, School of Fisheries, Seattle.

Rogers, D.E. 1998. Forecasts of the 1999 sockeye salmon runs to Bristol Bay using traditional FRI methodology. FRI-UW-9818. Univ. Washington, School of Fisheries, Seattle.

Rogers, D.E. 1999. A Bristol Bay almanac for 1999. FRI-UW 9906. Univ. Washington, School of Fisheries, Seattle.

Rogers, D.E., and R.P. Steen. 2000. A Bristol Bay almanac for 2000. SOF-UW-2005. Univ. Washington, School of Fisheries, Seattle. 59 pp.

Rogers, D.E., B.J. Rogers, T.P. Quinn, R. Steen, R. Hilborn, G.T. Ruggerone, T. Rogers, C. Boatright, and B. Ernst. 1999. Operations manual for Fisheries Research Institute Field Campus in Alaska. UW, FRI, Alaska Salmon Program. 74 pp.

Seber, G.A.F. 1982. The estimation of animal abundance and related parameters. Macmillan Publishing Co., Inc. New York. 654 pp.

Springborn, R.R., N.D. Lampsakis, and V.F. Gallucci. 1998. A time density model to estimate run size and entry timing in a salmon fishery. N. Am. J. Fish. Manage. 18: 391-405.

Straty, R.R. 1974. Ecology and behavior of juvenile sockeye salmon (Oncorhynchus nerka) in Bristol Bay and the eastern Bering Sea, p. 285-320. In D.W. Hood and E.J. Kelly (eds.). Oceanography of the Bering Sea with emphasis on renewable resources. Univ. Alaska, Inst. Mar. Sci., Occ. Publ. 2.

Townsend, R.L., P. Westhagen, D. Yasuda, J.R. Skalski, and K. Ryding. 1996.
Evaluation of the 1995 predictions of the run-timing of wild migrant yearling chinook in the Snake River Basin using Program Real Time. Center for Quantitative Science, School of Fisheries, University of Washington, Seattle, Washington. Technical Report to Bonneville Power Administration Project No. 91-051. DOE/BP-35885-9. 64 pp.

Townsend, R.L., D. Yasuda, and J.R. Skalski. 1997. Evaluation of the 1996 predictions of the run-timing of wild migrant spring/summer yearling chinook in the Snake River Basin using Program Real Time. School of Fisheries, University of Washington, Seattle. Technical Report to Bonneville Power Administration Project No. 91-051. DOE/BP-91572-1. 30 pp.

Verkhunov, A.V. 1995. Climate change and variability of the Bering Sea current system, p. 73-80. In R.J. Beamish (ed.). Climate change and northern fish populations. Can. Spec. Publ. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 121.

Walters, C.J., and S. Buckingham. 1975. A control system for intraseason salmon management, p. 105-137. In Proceedings of a workshop on salmon management, February 24-28. CP-75-2. International Institute for Applied Systems Analysis, Laxenburg.

Zehna, P.W. 1966. Invariance of maximum likelihood estimators. Annals of Mathematical Statistics 37: 744.

Zheng, J., and O.A. Mathisen. 1998. Inseason forecasting of southeastern Alaska pink salmon abundance based on sex ratios and commercial catch and effort data. N. Am. J. Fish. Manage. 18: 872-885.

## APPENDIX I. INTRODUCTION TO ADMB

In this appendix, I briefly describe ADMB for those who wish to use the forecast ADMB program developed in this thesis. For a detailed description about ADMB, refer to the manual (Anonymous 1994, 2000) available free from the following website: http://otter-rsch.com/admodel.htm

## Quick recipe for running ADMB program

For source code, two text files are required: a TPL file and a DAT file. Implement computation code in a TPL file, and put data in a DAT file (see examples of a TPL file and a DAT file in Appendix II).

When a TPL file and a DAT file are ready, we have to compile and link the TPL file before running the program. The ADMB command, 'makeadm' compiles the TPL file and links it to ADMB library. Once the compile and link are successful, an executable file will be generated automatically. The name of the executable file is the same as that of the TPL file except for the extension name. The extension name of a TPL file is 'TPL,' while that of its executable file is 'EXE.' If the executable file is successfully run with the DAT file, several files are generated. Of these, some important files are a PAR file, an STD file, a COR file, and a REP file. The PAR file has the parameter estimates, the STD file has not only the parameter estimates but also the standard deviations, and the COR file has the variance-covariance matrix of the estimates. The REP file contains the output of REPORT_SECTION in the TPL file. As an option, we may want the MCMC or likelihood profile computation. An HST file has the marginal distribution of the respective parameter after the MCMC computation. A PLT file contains the likelihood profile of the respective parameter after the likelihood profile computation.

In the following lists, I summarize the above paragraph, assuming the names of a TPL file and a DAT file are 'general.tpl' and 'yr2001d20.dat,' respectively. I display ADMB key words in bold font.

- makeadm general
(compile and link TPL file, general)
- general -ind yr2001d20.dat
(run executable file, general with DAT file, yr2001d20.dat)
- general -ind yr2001d20.dat -mcmc 1000000 -mcsave 30
(optional computation: do one million MCMC runs and save the results every 30 MCMC runs)
- general -ind yr2001d20.dat -lprof
(optinal computation: compute the likelihood profile)


## TPL file structure

A TPL file consists of up to nine sections. Three of these sections are required: DATA_SECTION, PARAMETER_SECTION, and PROCEDURE_SECTION. In DATA_SECTION, data values are set, and they are treated as constants. In PARAMETER_SECTION, quantities of estimation interest are declared, and they are treated as not-fixed values (quantities). The reason why I use term, 'not-fixed values' is to avoid confusion. The general meaning of parameters is different from that of parameters in ADMB, where only quantities of estimation interest are called parameters ${ }^{1}$. Quantities, which we do not intend to estimate, must be declared outside PARAMETER_SECTION, and be treated as fixed values. The estimation of not-fixed quantities is done in PROCEDURE_SECTION, where the objective function of not-fixed quantities is repeatedly differentiated with respect to all the respective not-fixed quantities.

In implementing the forecast algorithm of this thesis into ADMB, stock- and agespecific returns are not-fixed quantities. The 16 parameter estimates associated with the

[^5]joint objective function are fixed quantities, and should be declared outside PARAMETER_SECTION; they should remain fixed during PROCEDURE_SECTION (during the estimation of returns). The ADMB requirement prevents the use of random values from the parameter distributions (see four-step procedure in section 4.1).

## APPENDIX II. FORECAST ADMB CODE

## TPL FILE

I show an example of a TPL file here. '//' is followed by comments. The first value in DAT file is to be passed to 'daycode' in the first line under DATA_SECTION. By changing the value, users can explore as many hypotheses regarding run timing as they want (section 3.6. Incorporation of run timing forecast; Chapter 5).

```
DATA_SECTION
    init_int daycode; //today's daycode
    init_ivector whichLike(1,4); //which likelihood
    //Port Moller regression component
    init_number pmx; // daily cumulative index (cpue) for Port M. for the regression
    init_vector Ud(1,5); //Cumulative runs of the five districts
    vector ncump(1,5); //length of the elements in the historical cump (e.g. KNcump)
    // Data for Multinomial A (PM)
    init_vector pmUa(1,4); //the cumulative age-specific catches from PM fishery
    init_int ssize_MA // effective sample size for Mutinomial A
    number pm_offset
    number runs_offset
    // change data to be proportions (and use assumed sample size)
    !! pmUa /= sum(pmUa);
    !! pm_offset = -1.0* ssize_MA * (pmUa* log(pmUa)); //Added assumed sample size
    // Data for Multinomial B (Samples from fisheries of dif districts)
    init_matrix Uda(1,5,1,4); //five districts and four ages
    init_vector ssize_MB(1,5);
    matrix ssizemat_MMB(1,5,1,4);
LOCAL_CALCS
    for (i=1;i<=5;i++) {
        ssizemat_MB(i)=ssize_MB(i);
        // change data to be proportions (and use assumed sample size)
        Uda(i) /= sum( Uda(i) );
        runs_offset += -1.0*ssize_MB(1)*(Uda(i)* log(Uda(i)));
    }
END_CALCS
    init_int prior_type
    init_matrix mean_prior(1,5,1,4)
```

init_matrix cv_prior(1,5,1,4)
//Data for the Port Moller index calculation init_int betadim; //the number of betas in PM regression init_int rpmindD; //rows of PM index data
init_int cpmindD; //columns of PM index data init_int pmn; //rows of data matrix Xmat
init_ivector drows(1,5); //rows of the five-district data sets init_int dcols; //columns of the five-district data sets
init_int gagen; //rows of the age ratio data number gagen2;
matrix agefmat1(1,gagen,1,4); //PM age freq matrix agefmat2(1,gagen, 1,4 ); //district age freq
init_matrix agefreqpmmat(1,gagen,1,5); //age frequency of Port Moller catch init_matrix agefreqdistmat(1,gagen,1,5); //age freq. of district run

```
LOCAL_CALCS
    for(int i=1;i<=gagen; i++) {
        for(int j=1; j<=4; j++) {
            agefmatl(i,j)=agefreqpmmat(i,j+1);
            agefmat2(i,j)=agefreqdistmat(i,j+1);
        }
    }
END_CALCS
```

matrix xmat(1,pmn,1, betadim);
matrix ymat( $1, \mathrm{pmn}, 1,1$ ); //column vector
init_matrix pmmat(1,rpmindD,1,cpmindD); //Port Moller data
int r ;
!!r=1;
LOCAL_CALCS
for $(\mathrm{i}=\overline{1} ; \mathrm{i}<=$ rpmindD $; \mathrm{i}++)$
\{
if(pmmat( $\mathrm{i}, 2$ )==daycode) //2nd column is daycode
\{
xmat( $\mathrm{r}, 1$ ) $=$ pmmat $(\mathrm{i}, 4)$;
xmat( $\mathrm{r}, 2$ ) $=\operatorname{pmmat}(\mathrm{i}, 5)$;
$\operatorname{ymat}(\mathrm{r}, 1)=\operatorname{pmmat}(\mathrm{i}, 6)$;
$\mathrm{r}=\mathrm{r}+1$;
\}
\}
END_CALCS
!! int dr1=drows(1);
init_matrix KN _m(1,dr1, 1, dcols) //matrix form of KN data
!! int dr2=drows(2);
init_matrix E_m(1,dr2,1,dcols) //matrix form of Egegik data
!! int dr3=drows(3);
init_matrix U_m(1,dr3,1,dcols) //matrix form of Ugashik data
!! int dr4=drows(4);
init_matrix $\mathrm{N} \_\mathrm{m}(1, \mathrm{dr} 4,1$, dcols $) / / m$ matrix form of Nushagak data
!! int dr5=drows(5);
init_matrix T_m(1,dr5,1,dcols) //matrix form of Togiak data
int counter;
int i ;
int ii;
int j ;
int k ;
vector oldKNcump $(1,50)$;
vector oldEcump $(1,50)$;
vector oldUcump $(1,50)$;
vector oldNcump $(1,50)$;
vector oldTcump $(1,50)$;
// start the DATA SET 1
LOCAL_CALCS
ii $=0$;
for $(\mathrm{i}=1 ; \mathrm{i}<=$ drows $(1) ; \mathrm{i}++)$
$\{$
if(KN_m(i,5)==daycode) //5th column is daycode
\{
$\mathrm{ii}=\mathrm{ii}+1$;
if(KN_m(i,6)==0)
oldKNcump(ii) $=0.00001$;
else oldKNcump(ii)=KN_m(i,6); //6th column is proportion
\}
\}
END_CALCS
vector $\operatorname{KNcump}(1, i i)$
LOCAL_CALCS
for $(\mathrm{k}=1 ; \mathrm{k}<=\mathrm{ii} ; \mathrm{k}++$ )
$\operatorname{KNcump}(\mathrm{k})=$ oldKNcump(k);
END CALCS
//end the DATA SET 1
// start the DATA SET 2
LOCAL_CALCS
ii $=0$;
for $(\mathrm{i}=1 ; \mathrm{i}<=\operatorname{drows}(2) ; \mathrm{i}++)$
\{
if $\left(E \_m(i, 5)==\right.$ daycode $) / / 5$ th column is daycode
\{
$\mathrm{ii}=\mathrm{i}+1$;
if(E_m(i,6)==0)
oldEcump $($ ii $)=0.00001$;

```
        else
            oldEcump(ii)=E_m(i,6); //6th column is proportion
        }
    }
END_CALCS
```

```
vector Ecump(1,ii)
LOCAL CALCS
    for(k=1; k<=ii; k++)
        Ecump(k)=oldEcump(k);
END CALCS
//end the DATA SET 2
//start the DATA SET 3
LOCAL CALCS
    ii=0;
    for(i=1;i<=drows(3);i++)
        {
        if (U_m(i,5)==(daycode)) //5th column is daycode
            {
            ii= ii +1;
            if(U_m(i,6)==0)
                oldUcump(ii)=0.00001;
            else
                oldUcump(ii)=U_m(i,6); //6th column is proportion
            }
        }
END_CALCS
vector Ucump(1,ii)
LOCAL_CALCS
    for(k=1; k<=ii; k++)
        Ucump(k)=oldUcump(k);
END CALCS
//end the DATA SET }
//start the DATA SET 4
LOCAL_CALCS
    ii=0;
    for(i=1;i<= drows(4);i++)
        {
        if (N_m(i,5)==daycode) //5th column is daycode
            {
            ii= ii +1;
            if(N_m(i,6)==0)
                old}Ncump(ii)=0.00001
            else
                oldNcump(ii)=N_m(i,6); //6th column is proportion
            }
        }
END_CALCS
```

```
vector Ncump(1,ii)
```

LOCAL_CALCS
for $(\mathrm{k}=\overline{1 ;} \mathrm{k}<=\mathrm{ii} ; \mathrm{k}++)$
$\operatorname{Ncump}(\mathrm{k})=\operatorname{oldNcump}(\mathrm{k})$;
END_CALCS
//end the DATA SET 4
// start the DATA SET 5
LOCAL_CALCS
ii $=0$;
for $(\mathrm{i}=1 ; \mathrm{i}<=$ drows $(5) ; \mathrm{i}++$ )
\{
if $\left(T_{-} m(i, 5)==(\right.$ daycode $\left.)\right) / / 5$ th column is daycode
\{
$\mathrm{i}=\mathrm{i}+1$;
if(T_m(i,6)==0)
oldTcump $(\mathrm{ii})=0.00001$;
else
oldTcump $(\mathrm{ii})=\mathrm{T} \_\mathrm{m}(\mathrm{i}, 6)$; //6th column is proportion
\}
\}
END_CALCS
vector $\operatorname{Tcump}(1, i i)$
LOCAL CALCS
$\operatorname{for}(\mathrm{k}=\overline{1} ; \mathrm{k}<=\mathrm{ii} ; \mathrm{k}++)$
$\operatorname{Tcump}(\mathrm{k})=\operatorname{oldTcump}(\mathrm{k})$;
END_CALCS
//end the DATA SET 5
PARAMETER_SECTION
init_bounded_vector pops_tmp(1,20,1.,100000.,2);
//betas in PM regression
init_number b0pm(1); //phase 1
init_number blpm(1); //phase 1
number sig2pm; //sigma squared in PM regression
//sig2pm can be expressed as a function of data, b0pm and b1pm
init_vector lognmu_tmp $(1,5,1) ; / / \mathrm{mu}$ in lognormal;//phase 1
init_bounded_vector lognsig2_tmp(1,5,0.,2.,1); //sigma2 in lognormal; //phase 1
init_bounded_vector gage_tmp(1,3,0.,1., 1$)$;
sdreport_number totr; //total r
sdreport_vector pops_dist( 1,5 );
sdreport_matrix pops(1,5,1,4); //five districts and four ages
sdreport_vector betaPM(1,betadim);
sdreport_number varpm; //equal to $\operatorname{sig} 2 \mathrm{pm}$
sdreport_vector lognmu(1,5);
sdreport_vector lognsig2(1,5);
sdreport_vector gage $(1,3)$;
number fbetasvar; //negative log likelihood of betas and var in PM regression number flognparam1; //negative log likelihood of log normal parameters number flognparam2; //negative log likelihood of log normal parameters number flognparam3; //negative log likelihood of $\log$ normal parameters number flognparam4; //negative log likelihood of $\log$ normal parameters number flognparam5; //negative $\log$ likelihood of $\log$ normal parameters number fgearages; //negative log likelihoodd of age selecivity by PM gillnet fishery
number fpm; //Port Moller predictive density
number fpmage; //multinomial with PM age data
number fage; //multinomial with runs age data
number flognormal; //likelihood for the lognormal/gamma
vector pm _multinom(1,4); //declare//PM multinomial elements vector $\mathrm{pm} \overline{\mathrm{P}}$ redprop $(1,4)$; //vector of PM age-specific proportions
matrix multinom( $1,5,1,4$ ); //declare//Run multinomial elements
matrix Predprop(1,5,1,4); //declare
matrix Normal_value(1,5,1,4);
matrix smat(1,betadim, 1, betadim);
objective_function_value f; //negative logarithm
INITIALIZATION_SECTION
pops_tmp 1000 .
b0pm 25.7
b1pm 0.02
lognmu tmp 7.0
lognsig2_tmp 0.5
gage_tmp 0.5
PRELIMINARY_CALCS_SECTION
ncump(1)=KNcümp.index $\max ($ );
ncump(2)=Ecump.indexmax();
ncump (3)=Ucump.indexmax();
ncump(4)=Ncump.indexmax();
ncump(5)=Tcump.indexmax();
gagen2=gagen; //number of data rows for estimating MLE of age-specific gear selectivity
PROCEDURE_SECTION
$\mathrm{f}=0.0$;
pops.initialize(); //assign zero values
betaPM.initialize();
lognmu.initialize();
lognsig2.initialize();
varpm $=0.0$;

```
betaPM(1)=b0pm;
betaPM(2)=b1pm;
varpm=sig2pm;
fbetasvar=negloglike_betasvarF(betaPM);
f=fbetasvar;
for(i=1;i<=5;i++)
    for(ii=1;ii<=4;ii++)
        pops(i,ii)=pops_tmp(ii+4*(i-1));
totr=sum(pops);
for(i=1;i<=5;++i)
    pops_dist(i)=sum(pops(i));
if(whichLike(3)==1)
{
    fpm=(1.0/(2.0*varpm*square(1000)))*square(totr-(betaPM(1)+betaPM(2)*pmx)*1000);
    f+=fpm;
}
gage=gage_tmp;
fgearages=negloglike_gearage(gagen2, gage);
f+=fgearages;
if(whichLike(1)==1)
{
    pm_multinomial(); //multinomial A //returns pm_multinom
    fpmage=sum(pm_multinom) - pm_offset;
    f+=fpmage;
}
if(whichLike(2)==1)
{
    multinomial(); //multinomial B
    fage=sum(multinom) - runs_offset;
    f+=fage;
}
lognmu=lognmu_tmp;
lognsig2=lognsig2_tmp;
flognparam1=negloglike_logmusig2F(lognmu(1), lognsig2(1), ncump(1), Ud(1)/KNcump);
flognparam2=negloglike_logmusig2F(lognmu(2), lognsig2(2), ncump(2), Ud(2)/Ecump);
flognparam3=negloglike_logmusig2F(lognmu(3), lognsig2(3), ncump(3), Ud(3)/Ucump);
flognparam4=negloglike_logmusig2F(lognmu(4), lognsig2(4), ncump(4), Ud(4)/Ncump);
flognparam5=negloglike_logmusig2F(lognmu(5), lognsig2(5), ncump(5), Ud(5)/Tcump);
f+=flognparam1;
f+=flognparam2;
f+=flognparam3;
```

```
f+=flognparam4;
f+=flognparam5;
if(whichLike(4)==1)
{
    flognormal=0.0;
    for (i=1;i<=5;++i)
        {
        flognormal += -1.0* log(1.0/sum(pops(i)) )+(1/(2*lognsig2(i))) * square( log(sum(pops(i)))-lognmu(i)
);
    }
    f+=flognormal;
}
if(prior_type==1)
    {
        Normal_prior(); //each elements by age and district
        f+=sum(Normal_value);
    }
```

FUNCTION dvariable negloglike_betasvarF(dvar_vector betas)
dvariable negl;
dvar_matrix bmat(1,betadim, 1,1 );//column vector
$\operatorname{bmat}(1,1)=\operatorname{betas}(1)$;
$\operatorname{bmat}(2,1)=\operatorname{betas}(2)$;
varpm=sum(square(ymat-xmat*bmat))/pmn;
negl $=(\mathrm{pmn} / 2.0) * \log (\mathrm{varpm})+\left(1 /\left(2.0^{*} \text { varpm }\right)\right)^{*} \operatorname{sum}\left(\right.$ rowsum(square $\left(\mathrm{ymat}-\mathrm{xmat}^{*}\right.$ bmat $\left.)\right)$ );
return negl;
FUNCTION dvariable negloglike_logmusig2F(dvariable mu, dvariable sig2, double\& n , dvector\& yv )
dvar_vector negl(1,n); //each negative log likelihood
dvariable negL; //sum of the respecive log likelihoods
for(int $\mathrm{i}=1 ; \mathrm{i}<=\mathrm{n} ; \mathrm{i}++$ )
negl(i) $=(1.0 / 2.0) * \log (\operatorname{sig} 2)+(1.0 /(2.0 * \operatorname{sig} 2)) *$ square $(\log (y v(i))-\mathrm{mu}) ;$
negL=sum(negl);
return negL;
FUNCTION dvariable negloglike_gearage(double\& n, dvar_vector G)
dvar_vector negl(1,n); //each negative log likelihood
dvariable negL; //sumof the respective neg. log likelihood
dvar_vector gearagev(1,4); //vector of (g1,g2,g3,1)
gearagev(1)=G(1);
gearagev(2)=G(2);
gearagev(3)=G(3);
gearagev(4)=1; //assuming full selectivity for age 2.3
dvar_vector subnegl(1,4);
for(int $\mathrm{i}=1 ; \mathrm{i}<=\mathrm{n} ; \mathrm{i}++$ ) \{
for (int $\mathrm{j}=1 ; \mathrm{j}<=4 ; \mathrm{j}++$ ) \{
subnegl(j)=agefmat1(i,j)*log(agefmat2(i,j)*gearagev(j)/(agefmat2(i)*gearagev));
//the denominator is vector* vector
\}
negl(i)=-1.0*sum(subnegl);
\}

```
    negL=sum(negl);
```

    return negL;
    FUNCTION Normal_prior
Normal_value $=$ elem_div( square(pops - mean_prior),(2*square(elem_prod(cv_prior,mean_prior))));
FUNCTION pm_multinomial //returns vector form
dvar_vector gearagev(1,4); //vector of (g1,g2,g3,1)
gearagev(1)=gage(1);
gearagev(2)=gage(2);
gearagev(3)=gage(3);
gearagev $(4)=1$; //assuming full selectivity for age 2.3
for $(\mathrm{i}=1 ; \mathrm{i}<=4 ; \mathrm{i}++$ )
$\operatorname{pmPredprop}(i)=\operatorname{gearagev}(i) *(\operatorname{pops}(1, i)+\operatorname{pops}(2, i)+\operatorname{pops}(3, i)+\operatorname{pops}(4, i)+\operatorname{pops}(5, i))$;
pmPredprop $/=\operatorname{sum}($ pmPredprop);
pm_multinom $=-1.0 *$ ssize_MA*elem_prod $(\mathrm{pmUa}, \log (\mathrm{pmPredprop}))$;

FUNCTION multinomial //returns matrix form
for $(\mathrm{i}=1 ; \mathrm{i}<=5 ; \mathrm{i}++$ )
Predprop(i)=pops(i)/sum(pops(i));
multinom $=-1.0^{*}$ elem_prod(ssizemat_MB, elem_prod(Uda, $\log ($ Predprop $\left.)\right)$ );
REPORT_SECTION
report<<"Age frequencies of Port Moller \& Districts"<<endl;
report<<"observed"<<endl;
report<<pmUa<<endl; //observed PM age freq
report<<Uda<<endl; //observed district age freq
report<<"predicted"<<endl;
report<<pmPredprop<<endl;
report $\ll$ Predprop $\ll$ endl;
report<<"PM regression from PM CPUE index"<<endl;
report<<"mean of regression model"<<endl;
report $\ll$ " " $\ll($ betaPM $(1)+$ betaPM(2)*pmx)* $1000 \ll$ endl;
report $\ll$ "predicted total run" $\ll$ endl;
report<<" " $\ll$ totr $\ll$ endl;
report<<"mean values of district-run distribution"<<endl;
report $\ll$ " " $\ll \operatorname{mean}(\mathrm{Ud}(1) /$ KNcump $) \ll " ~ " \ll \operatorname{mean}(U d(2) /$ Ecump $) \lll " \ll \operatorname{mean}(U d(3) /$ Ucump);
report $\ll$ " " $\ll$ mean(Ud(4)/Ncump) $\ll$ " " $\ll$ mean(Ud(5)/Tcump) $\ll$ endl;
report<<"predicted district-runs" $\ll$ endl;
report<<" ";
for $(\mathrm{i}=1 ; \mathrm{i}<=5 ; \mathrm{i}++)$
report<<sum(pops(i))<<" ";
report<<endl;
report<<"beta0, beta1 and var in PM regression model" $\ll$ endl;
report $\ll$ " "<<betaPM $(1) \ll$ " "<<betaPM $(2) \ll$ " " $\ll$ varpm $\ll$ endl;
report<<"lognormal_mu in district-run model"<<endl;
report $\ll$ lognmu $\ll$ endl;
report<<"lognormal_sigt in district-run model"<<endl;
report $\ll \operatorname{lognsig} 2 \ll$ endl;
report<<"Age-specific selectivity of PM gillnet"<<endl;
report<<gage<<endl;
report<<"negative log of PM multinomial: fpmage"<<endl;
report $\ll$ " "<<fpmage $\ll$ " "<<whichLike(1)<<endl;
report<<"negative log of Inshore multinomial: fage"<<endl;
report $\ll$ " " $\ll$ fage $\ll$ " " $\ll$ whichLike(2) $\ll$ endl;
report<<"negative log of PM regression: fpm" $\ll$ endl;
report<<" "<<fpm<<" "<<whichLike(3)<<endl;
report $\ll$ "negative log of Lognormal: flognormal" $\ll$ endl;
report<<" "<<flognormal<<" "<<whichLike(4)<<endl;
report<<"Total objective: f"<<endl;
report $\ll$ " " $\ll \mathrm{f} \ll$ endl;
report $\ll$ "Prior (Normal: 1 or Uniform: 0): " $\ll$ prior_type $\ll$ endl;
report $\ll$ "Adjusted day code: " $\ll$ daycode $\ll$ endl;
report $\ll$ "duga and dtog: " $\ll$ duga $\ll$ " " $\ll$ dtog $\ll$ endl;

## DATA FILE

I display an example of a DAT file here. '\#' is followed by comments. Because the historical data are so large, I omit the middle parts of the data from the example.
\#Which day?
\#adjusted day code(change) \#TODAY CODE 20
\#20 \#add 2 because of being earlier by 1.6 than the past yrs (I sense it from PM data) 22
\#Which likelihood (PM_Multinomial/ inshore_Multinomial/PM_Regression/ inshore_lognormal) 1111
\#pmx: Mean of cumulative Roger's weighted CPUE from PM fishery (change) \#Unit of this value: $6000^{*}$ catch/(fishing gear length (fm) * mean fishing time (minutes)) 1821.905
\#For the lognormal(integrated across ages) Cummulative runsize to a particular day \#Ud: unit of these values: (1000's) (change)
32062079124243929
\#Data for Multinomial A (PM)
\#pmUa: cumulative age-specific catches by PM fishery (change)
$\begin{array}{llll}74 & 2960 & 164 & 385\end{array}$
\# sample size of multinomial A
100
\#Data for Multinomial B (Samples from fisheries of dif districts)
\# Uda: Cumulative runs by district and age (change)
\# Real sample size
$\begin{array}{llll}30 & 3347 & 46 & 221\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{llll}29 & 2156 & 333 & 1337\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{llll}25 & 419 & 26 & 35\end{array}$
$14 \quad 1954 \quad 1 \quad 20$
$5 \quad 253 \quad 0.1 \quad 3$ \#crash when 525303
\#
\# sample size of multinomial B
2020202020

```
# PRIORS from preseason forecasts
# Switch for prior type (1: normal/ 0: uniform)
1
# Prior Means (thousands)
250016001500 1200
6002200 1200 1300
400200 300 500
25004800 200 300
1003004040
# Prior CV
0.6700}101.4608 3.6550 1.045
0.5242 0.6724}1.6920 2.3267
0.8173 6.8838
0.2384
2.2128
\#betadim: dimension of betas
2
#rpmindD: Rows of Rogers PM index data
6 6 0
#cpmindD: Columns of Rogers PM index data
6
#pmn: rows of data matrix, Xmat #(1998-1984-1)
15
\#drows: Rows in the five district-specific data sets
\(\begin{array}{lllll}1714 & 1750 & 1664 & 1687 & 1385\end{array}\)
\#dcols: The respective five district-specific data sets have 6 columns 6
\#gagen: rows of age frequency data 14
\#Age ratioes of Port Moller catch
\begin{tabular}{lllll} 
\#pmyr & a 1.2 & a 1.3 & a 2.2 & a 2.3 \\
1987 & 0.462 & 0.185 & 0.182 & 0.171 \\
1988 & 0.190 & 0.505 & 0.200 & 0.105 \\
1989 & 0.106 & 0.203 & 0.503 & 0.187 \\
1990 & 0.108 & 0.234 & 0.410 & 0.249 \\
1991 & 0.140 & 0.517 & 0.158 & 0.185 \\
1992 & 0.079 & 0.349 & 0.322 & 0.250 \\
1993 & 0.063 & 0.200 & 0.266 & 0.471 \\
1994 & 0.068 & 0.202 & 0.398 & 0.332 \\
1995 & 0.138 & 0.157 & 0.506 & 0.199 \\
1996 & 0.075 & 0.520 & 0.131 & 0.275 \\
1997 & 0.119 & 0.335 & 0.279 & 0.267 \\
1998 & 0.176 & 0.381 & 0.090 & 0.352 \\
1999 & 0.447 & 0.211 & 0.260 & 0.082 \\
2000 & 0.147 & 0.633 & 0.078 & 0.142
\end{tabular}
\#Age ratioes of district run
```

| \#distyr | a 1.2 | a 1.3 | a 2.2 | a 2.3 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 1987 | 0.496 | 0.232 | 0.119 | 0.153 |
| 1988 | 0.208 | 0.430 | 0.229 | 0.133 |
| 1989 | 0.103 | 0.161 | 0.641 | 0.095 |
| 1990 | 0.141 | 0.215 | 0.432 | 0.213 |
| 1991 | 0.194 | 0.479 | 0.209 | 0.119 |
| 1992 | 0.133 | 0.278 | 0.356 | 0.234 |
| 1993 | 0.128 | 0.189 | 0.341 | 0.342 |
| 1994 | 0.084 | 0.147 | 0.585 | 0.184 |
| 1995 | 0.161 | 0.118 | 0.572 | 0.148 |
| 1996 | 0.107 | 0.520 | 0.128 | 0.245 |
| 1997 | 0.203 | 0.262 | 0.346 | 0.189 |
| 1998 | 0.344 | 0.294 | 0.129 | 0.233 |
| 1999 | 0.513 | 0.212 | 0.211 | 0.064 |
| 2000 | 0.202 | 0.622 | 0.080 | 0.095 |

\#pmmat:Rogers Port Moller index \#660 rows

| \#yr daycd dayindex one cumudayindex actrun |  |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 1985 | 2 | 7.04 | 1 | 7.04 | 36.5 |
| 1985 | 3 | 3.44 | 1 | 10.48 | 36.5 |
| 1985 | 4 | 8.88 | 1 | 19.36 | 36.5 |
| 1985 | 5 | 13.92 | 1 | 33.28 | 36.5 |
| 1985 | 6 | 31.84 | 1 | 65.12 | 36.5 |
| 1985 | 7 | 42.24 | 1 | 107.36 | 36.5 |
| 1985 | 8 | 102.32 | 1 | 209.68 | 36.5 |
| 1985 | 9 | 31.84 | 1 | 241.52 | 36.5 |

..............(omitting) ......................

| 2000 | 25 | 25.23 | 1 | 604.12 | 27.8 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 2000 | 26 | 19.11 | 1 | 623.23 | 27.8 |
| 2000 | 27 | 28.47 | 1 | 651.70 | 27.8 |
| 2000 | 28 | 13.02 | 1 | 664.72 | 27.8 |
| 2000 | 29 | 5.70 | 1 | 670.42 | 27.8 |
| 2000 | 30 | 0.00 | 1 | 670.42 | 27.8 |
| 2000 | 31 | 0.00 | 1 | 670.42 | 27.8 |
| 2000 | 32 | 0.00 | 1 | 670.42 | 27.8 |
| 2000 | 33 | 0.00 | 1 | 670.42 | 27.8 |
| 2000 | 34 | 0.00 | 1 | 670.42 | 27.8 |
| 2000 | 35 | 0.00 | 1 | 670.42 | 27.8 |
| 2000 | 36 | 0.00 | 1 | 670.42 | 27.8 |
| 2000 | 37 | 0.00 | 1 | 670.42 | 27.8 |
| 2000 | 38 | 0.00 | 1 | 670.42 | 27.8 |
| 2000 | 39 | 0.00 | 1 | 670.42 | 27.8 |
| 2000 | 40 | 0.00 | 1 | 670.42 | 27.8 |
| 2000 | 41 | 0.00 | 1 | 670.42 | 27.8 |
| 2000 | 42 | 0.00 | 1 | 670.42 | 27.8 |
| 2000 | 43 | 0.00 | 1 | 670.42 | 27.8 |
| 2000 | 44 | 0.00 | 1 | 670.42 | 27.8 |
| 2000 | 45 | 0.00 | 1 | 670.42 | 27.8 |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| \#distcd | mo | day | yr | daycd | cumrunpro |
| 1 | 6 | 22 | 1955 | 13 | 0.0003 |
| 1 | 6 | 23 | 1955 | 14 | 0.0003 |


| 1 | 6 | 24 | 1955 | 15 | 0.0003 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 1 | 6 | 25 | 1955 | 16 | 0.0084 |
| 1 | 6 | 26 | 1955 | 17 | 0.009 |
| 1 | 6 | 27 | 1955 | 18 | 0.0685 |
| 1 | 6 | 28 | 1955 | 19 | 0.0692 |
| 1 | 6 | 29 | 1955 | 20 | 0.0718 |

............... (omitting )...............

| 5 | 8 | 7 | 2000 | 59 | 0.9946 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 5 | 8 | 8 | 2000 | 60 | 0.996 |
| 5 | 8 | 9 | 2000 | 61 | 0.9977 |
| 5 | 8 | 10 | 2000 | 62 | 0.9985 |
| 5 | 8 | 11 | 2000 | 63 | 0.9985 |
| 5 | 8 | 12 | 2000 | 64 | 0.9985 |
| 5 | 8 | 13 | 2000 | 65 | 0.9985 |
| 5 | 8 | 14 | 2000 | 66 | 0.9989 |
| 5 | 8 | 15 | 2000 | 67 | 1 |

## VITA

Saang-Yoon Hyun

2002

## Education

Ph.D. (Fall quarter 1997 - Spring quarter 2002) in Quantitative Ecology and Resource Management (QERM) at the University of Washington (Seattle, WA).
M.S. (Fall quarter 1993 - Fall quarter 1996) in Fisheries at the University of Washington (Seattle, WA).
B.F. (March 1986 - February 1993; on-leave from 1988 to 1990 for military service) in Aquaculture and fisheries management at the Cheju National University (Cheju, Korea).

High school diploma (February 1986) Ohyun High School (Cheju, Korea).

## Research fields of interest

Quantitative fisheries management, biostatistics.

## TA work experience

Fall 2000 - Spring 2002: Teaching assistant for QERM and Quantitative Science classes at the UW.

## RA work experience

Summer 2001: Research assistant for salmon habitat project (PI: Dr. Ashley Steel) at the UW.

1997 - Spring 2000: Research assistant for Highseas project (PI: Dr. Katherine Myers) at the UW.

1994-1996: Research assistant for Columbia River Salmon Passage Model (CRiSP) project (PI: Dr. James Anderson) at the UW.

## Other work experience

1988-1990: Military service (mandatory in Korea).

## Publications

Hyun, S. 2002. Inseason forecasts of sockeye salmon returns to the Bristol Bay districts of Alaska. Ph.D. dissertation, University of Washington, Seattle, Wash.
Norris, J.G., S. Hyun, and J.J. Anderson. 2000. Ocean distribution of Columbia River Upriver Bright Fall Chinook salmon stock. N. Pac. Anadr. Fish Comm. Bull. No. 2: 221-232.

Myers, K.W, R.V. Walker, N.D. Davis, K.Y. Aydin, S. Hyun, R.W. Hilborn, and R.L. Burgner. 2000. Migrations and abundance of salmonids in the North Pacific, 2000. Annual report to ABL, NMFS, High Seas Salmon Research Project. Fish Res. Inst. Univ. Wash., Seattle (SAFS-UW-0009). 93 p.
Myers, K.W, R.V. Walker, N.D. Davis, K.Y. Aydin, S. Hyun, R.W. Hilborn, and R.L. Burgner. 1999. Migrations, abundance, and origins of salmonids in offshore waters of the North Pacific, 1999. Annual report to ABL, NMFS, High Seas Salmon Research Project. Fish Res. Inst. Univ. Wash., Seattle (FRI-UW9909). 125 p .

Hyun, S., K.W. Myers, and J.G. Sneva. 1998. The time of annulus formation in chinook salmon caught in Washington coastal waters. (NPAFC Doc. 352.) FRI-UW9808. Fisheries Research Institute, University of Washington, Seattle, WA.

Myers, K.W, R.V. Walker, N.D. Davis, K.Y. Aydin, S. Hyun, R.W. Hilborn, and R.L. Burgner. 1998. Migrations, abundance, and origins of salmonids in offshore waters of the North Pacific, 1998. Annual report to ABL, NMFS, High Seas Salmon Research Project. Fish Res. Inst. Univ. Wash., Seattle (FRI-UW9810). 72 p .

Hyun, S. 1996. Ocean distributions of the Columbia River Hanford Reach and Snake River fall chinook salmon (Oncorhynchus tshawytscha) stocks in the effect of interannual ocean conditions on their survival. M.S. thesis, University of Washington, Seattle, Wash.

## Scholarships and awards

Awarded 1993-1994 Rotary Foundation Ambassadorial Scholarship for an M.S. in Fisheries at the UW.

Awarded the prize of Dean at College of Oceanic Sciences in Cheju National University (CNU) for an honor graduate (1993).

## Hobbies

Traveling, hiking, biking, swimming, skiing.


[^0]:    ${ }^{1}$ This salmon age is expressed as its European way (Koo 1962). A fish of age ' $x$ '. ' $y$ ' spent ' $x$ ' winter(s) in freshwater after fry stage and ' $y$ ' winter(s) in the ocean.

[^1]:    ${ }^{2} \mathrm{CV}=$ standard deviation / mean

[^2]:    ${ }^{3}$ exploitation rate $=$ catch $/$ run

[^3]:    ${ }^{4}$ Even though Mundy (1979) and Springborn et al (1998) call the normalized frequency distribution of fish arrival time 'time density,' I refrain from using the term, 'density' because the random variable $Y$ is discrete not continuous.

[^4]:    ${ }^{1}$ The term 'estimate' is different from the term 'estimator.' An estimator is a function of a sample, and an estimate is the realized value of an estimator obtained when a sample is actually taken (Casella and Berger 1990).

[^5]:    ${ }^{1}$ Some of ADMB users call quantities of estimation interest 'free parameters,' but the terms are not found in ADMB manual.

